

# References

---

1. Tchernia, P. (1980). *Descriptive Regional Oceanography*. Pergamon Press, Oxford, 253 pp.
2. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1972). *A Guide to Research Done Concerning Ocean Currents and Water Masses in the South West Indian Ocean*. University of Cape Town, Cape Town, 577 pp.
3. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1980). Fisiese Oseanologie van die Suidwes Indiese Oseaan: 'n bronnelys en oorsig van 1970 tot 1980. *WNNR Verslag*, **T/SEA 8016**, 82 pp.
4. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1987). The Physical Oceanology of the South West Indian Ocean; a bibliography for 1980 to 1985. *WNNR-verslag*, **T/SEA 8712**, 131 pp.
5. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1992). The Physical Oceanology of the South West Indian Ocean; a bibliography from 1986 to 1990. *CSIR Research Report*, **707**, 95 pp.
6. Basto, A. de M. (1945). *Diario da viagem de Vasco da Gama*. Vol. 1. Editora, Porto, 150 pp.
7. Rennell, J. (1832). *An investigation of the currents of the Atlantic Ocean and of those which prevail between the Indian Ocean and the Atlantic*. J.G. and F. Rivington, London, 3xx pp.
8. Deacon, M. (1971). *Scientists and the Sea 1650–1900; a study of marine science*. Academic Press, London, 445 pp.
9. Kortum, G. (1990). An unpublished manuscript of Alexander von Humboldt on the Gulf Stream. In *Ocean Sciences. Their history and relation to man*, editors W. Lenz and M. Deacon. *Deutsche Hydrographische Zeitschrift*, **B(22)**: 122–129.
10. Koninklijk Nederlandsch Meteorologisch Instituut (1857). De Agulhas stroom, afgeleid uit de temperatuur van het zeewater aan de oppervlakte; en de invloed dien deze op de atmosfeer uitoefent. In *Uitkomsten van Wetenschap en Ervaring, aangaande winden en zee-stromingen in sommige gedeelten van den oceaan*, Koninklijk Nederlandsch Meteorologisch Instituut, L.E. Bosch en Zoon, Utrecht, pp. 40–50.
11. Van Gogh, J. (1858). De stormen nabij de Kaap de Goede Hoop in verband beschouwd met de temperatuur der zee. *Verhandelingen en Mededelingen der Koninklijke Akademie, afdeling Natuurkunde*, **8**, 23 pp.
12. Brundrit, G.B. and L.V. Shannon (1989). Cape storms and the Agulhas Current: a glimpse of the future? *South African Journal of Science*, **85(10)**: 619–620.
13. Jury, M.R. (1994). A thermal front within the marine atmospheric boundary layer over the Agulhas Current south of Africa: Composite aircraft observations. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **99(C2)**: 3297–3304.
14. Lutjeharms, J.R.E., W.P.M. de Ruijter and R.G. Peterson (1992). Interbasin exchange and the Agulhas retroflection; the development of some oceanographic concepts. *Deep-Sea Research*, **39(10)**: 1791–1807.
15. Thomson, C.W. and J. Murray (editors) (1881–1895). *Report on the scientific results of the voyage of H.M.S. Challenger during the years 1873–1876*. His Majesty's Stationery Office, London, 50 volumes.
16. Von Schleinitz, B. (1889–1890). *Die Forschungsreise S.M.S. "Gazelle" in den Jahren 1874 bis 1876 unter Kommando des Kapitän zur Zee Freiherrn von Schleinitz*. Hydrographische Amt, Reichs-Marine-Ampts, Berlin, Bände I–V.
17. Hydrographic Department (1896). *List of oceanic depths and serial temperature observations during the years 1895*. Great Britain, Hydrographic Department, London.
18. Chun, C. (et al.) (1902–1940). *Wissenschaftliche Ergebnisse der Deutschen Tiefsee-Expedition auf dem Dampfer Valdivia, 1898–1899*. Gustaf Fischer, Jena, 24 volumes.
19. Chun, C. (1900). *Aus den Tiefen des Weltmeeres. Schilderungen von der Deutschen Tiefsee-Expedition*. Gustav Fisher, Jena, 549 pp.
20. Von Drygalski, E. (editor) (1908–1952). *Ergebnisse der Deutschen Südpolar-Expedition 1901–1903*. Reichsamtes des Innern, Berlin, Bände I–XX.
21. Reichs-marine Ampt (1909). *Forschungsreise S.M.S. "Planet" 1906–1907*. Reichs-marine Ampt, Berlin, Bände I–V.
22. Brennecke, W. (1915). Oceanographische Arbeiten S.M.S. Möwe im westlichen Indischen Ozean 1913. *Annalen der Hydrographie und Maritimen Meteorologie*, **43(8)**: 337–343.
23. Anonymous (1970). Agulhas. In *Standard Encyclopaedia of Southern Africa*, editors D.J. Potgieter and P.C. du Plessis, Vol.1, Nasou, Cape Town, p. 254.
24. Kerhallet, M.C.P. de (1852). Considérations générales sur l'océan Atlantique. *Annales Hydrographiques*, **1er Sem.** pp. 33–143.
25. Zimmermann, W.F.A. (1865). *Der Erdball und Seine Naturwunder*. Gustav Hempel, Berlin, 544 pp. (as shown in Peterson *et al.*, 1996<sup>26</sup>).
26. Peterson, R.G., L. Stramma and G. Kortum (1996). Early concepts and charts of ocean circulation. *Progress in Oceanography*, **37(1)**: 1–115.
27. Rennell, J. (1778). *Chart of the Bank of Lagullus and southern Coast of Africa*, London.

28. Maury, M.F. (1855). *The Physical Geography of the Sea*. Harper & Brothers, New York, 274 pp., 12 plates.
29. Findlay, A.G. (1866). *A directory for the navigation of the Indian Ocean*. Richard Holmes Laurie, London, 113 pp.
30. Krümmel, O. (1882). Bemerkungen über die Meeresströmungen und Temperaturen in der Falklandsee. *Aus den Archiv der Deutschen Seewarte*, **V**, 2, 25 pp. (as shown by Peterson *et al.*, 199626).
31. Krümmel, O. (1911). *Handbuch der Ozeanographie. Band II. Die Bewegungsformen des Meeres*. von J. Engelhorn's Nachf., Stuttgart, 766 pp.
32. Merz, A. (1925). Die Deutsche Atlantische Expedition auf dem Vermessungs- und Forschungsschiff "Meteor". *Sitzungsberichten der Physikalisch-Matematischen Klasse der Preussischen Akademie der Wissenschaften*, **31**, pp. 562–586.
33. Defant, A. (1932–1960). *Wissenschaftlichen Ergebnisse der Deutschen Atlantischen Expedition auf dem Forschungs- und Vermessungsschiff "Meteor" 1925–1927*. Bände I–XVI, Berlin.
34. Discovery Committee (1929). Discovery Investigations Station List, 1925–1927. *Discovery Reports*, **1**: 3–138.
35. B[arlow], E.W. (1932). Major James Rennell. *Marine Observer*, **9**(101): 94–98. 496.
36. Pollard, R. and G. Griffiths (1993). James Rennell, the father of oceanography. *Ocean Challenge*, **4**(1/2): 24–25.
37. Bravo, M. (1993). James Rennell: antiquarian of ocean currents. *Ocean Challenge*, **4**(1/2): 41–50.
38. Gould, J. (1993). James Rennell's view of the Atlantic circulation: a comparison with our present knowledge. *Ocean Challenge*, **4**(1/2): 26–32.
39. Markham, C.R. (1901). *Major James Rennell and the rise of modern English geography*. Cassell and Company, London, 232 pp.
40. Dietrich, G. (1935). Aufbau und Dynamik des südlichen Agulhasstromgebietes. *Veröffentlichungen des Institut für Meereskunde an der Universität Berlin*, n.f. **A**(27): 79 pp.
41. Dietrich, G. (1936). Aufbau und Bewegung von Golfstrom und Agulhasstrom, eine vergleichende Betrachtung. *Naturwissenschaften*, **24**(15): 225–230.
42. Dietrich, G. (1935). Zur Dynamik des Atlantischen Zweiges des Agulhasstromes. *Annalen der Hydrographie und Maritimen Meteorologie*, **63**: 383–387.
43. Möller, L. (1929). Die Zirkulation des Indischen Ozeans; auf Grund von Temperatur- und Salzgehaltstiefenmessungen und Oberflächenstrombeobachtungen. *Veröffentlichungen des Instituts für Meereskunde an der Universität Berlin*, n.f. **A21**: 48 pp.
44. Michaelis, G. (1923). Die Wasserbewegung an der Oberfläche des Indischen Ozeans im Januar und Juli. *Veröffentlichungen des Instituts für Meereskunde an der Universität Berlin*, n.f. **A8**(16): 32 pp.
45. Paech, H. (1926). Die Oberflächenströmungen um Madagascar in ihrem Jährlichen Gang. *Veröffentlichungen des Instituts für Meereskunde an der Universität Berlin*, n.f. **A**(16): 39 pp.
46. Möller, L. (1933). Zur Frage der Tiefenzirkulation im Indischen Ozean. *Annalen des Hydrographie Berlin*, **61**(8,9): 233–236.
47. Thomsen, H. (1935). Entstehung und Verbreitung einiger charakteristischer Wassermassen in dem Indischen und südlichen Pazifischen Ozean. *Annalen der Hydrographie und Maritimen Meteorologie*, **63**(8): 293–305.
48. Thomsen, H. (1933). The circulation in the depths of the Indian Ocean. *Journal Conseil*, **8**(1): 73–79.
49. Schott, G. (1935). *Geographie des Indischen und Stillen Ozeans*. C. Boysen, 413 pp., 37 plates.
50. Sverdrup, H.U., H.W. Johnson and R.H. Flemming (1942). *The oceans; their physics, chemistry and general biology*. Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, 1087 pp.
51. Brown, A.C. (1997). John D.F. Gilchrist and the early years of marine science in South Africa. In *A Century of Marine Science in South Africa*, editors A.I.L. Payne and J.R.E. Lutjeharms, Sea Fisheries Research Institute, Royal Society of South Africa, pp. 2–16 and *Transactions of the Royal Society of South Africa*, **52**(1): 2–16.
52. Summers, R.F.H. (1975). *A History of the South African Museum, 1825–1975*. A. A. Balkema, Cape Town, 245 pp.
53. Gilchrist, J.D.F. (1923). The South African seas. *South African Journal of Science*, **20**(1): 1–27.
54. Gilchrist, J.D.F. (1902). Observations on the temperature and salinity of the sea around the Cape Peninsula. *Marine Investigations in South Africa*, **1**: 181–216 + 10 plates + p. 238.
55. Gilchrist, J.D.F. (1904). Currents on the South African coast, as indicated by the course of drift bottles. *Marine Investigations in South Africa*, **2**: 101–113.
56. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and L.V. Shannon (1997). A century of physical oceanography in South Africa; in search of the legacy of John D. Gilchrist. In *A Century of Marine Science in South Africa*, editors A.I.L. Payne and J.R.E. Lutjeharms, Sea Fisheries Research Institute, Royal Society of South Africa, pp. 17–30 and *Transactions of the Royal Society of South Africa*, **52**(1): 17–30.
57. Gilchrist, J.D.F. (1925). II. Report of Director of Survey. In *Report of the Fisheries and Marine Biological Survey, Union of South Africa, June, 1923–June, 1925*. **4**. Cape Town; Government Printers: xix–lx.
58. Gilchrist, J.D.F. (1905). The South African marine fauna and its environment. In *Science in South Africa*, editors W. Flint and J.D.F. Gilchrist, Maskew Miller, Cape Town, pp. 182–197.
59. Harris, T.F.W., R. Legeckis and D. van Forest [sic] (1978). Satellite infra-red images in the Agulhas Current system. *Deep-Sea Research*, **25**(6): 543–548.
60. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1981). Features of the southern Agulhas Current circulation from satellite remote sensing. *South African Journal of Science*, **77**(5): 231–236.
61. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and A.L. Gordon (1987). Shedding

- of an Agulhas Ring observed at sea. *Nature*, **325**(7000): 138–140.
62. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and H.R. Roberts (1988). The Natal Pulse; an extreme transient on the Agulhas Current. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **93**(C1): 631–645.
63. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and H.R. Valentine (1988). Eddies at the Sub-Tropical Convergence south of Africa. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **18**(5): 761–774.
64. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and R.C. van Ballegooyen (1988). Anomalous upstream retroflexion in the Agulhas Current. *Science*, **240**(4860): 1770–1772.
65. Gordon, A.L. (1985). Indian–Atlantic transfer of thermocline water at the Agulhas retroflexion. *Science*, **227**(4690): 1030–1033.
66. Gordon, A.L. (1986). Inter-ocean exchange of thermocline water. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **91**(C4): 5037–5046.
67. Gordon, A.L., R.F. Weiss, W.M. Smethie and M.J. Warner (1992). Thermocline and intermediate water communication between the South Atlantic and Indian Oceans. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **97**(C5): 7223–7240.
68. Weijs, W., W.P.M. de Ruijter, H.A. Dijkstra and P.J. van Leeuwen (1999). Impact of interbasin exchange on the Atlantic overturning circulation. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **29**(9): 2266–2284.
69. Zlotnicki, V. (1991). Sea level differences across the Gulf Stream and the Kuroshio. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **21**(4): 599–609.
70. Gründlingh, M.L. (1988). Altimetry in the southwest Indian Ocean. *South African Journal of Science*, **84**(7): 568–573.
71. Gründlingh, M.L. (1993). On the satellite-derived wave climate off southern Africa. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **13**: 223–235.
72. Wakker, K.F., M.C. Naeije, R. Scharroo and B.A.C. Ambrosius (1991). Extraction of mesoscale ocean currents information from Geosat altimeter data. *Proceedings of the Space & Sea Colloquium*, Paris, ESA SP-312, pp. 221–226.
73. Wakker, K.F., R.C.A. Zandbergen, M.C. Naeije and B.A.C. Ambrosius (1990). Geosat altimeter data analysis for the oceans around South Africa. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **95**(C3): 2991–3006.
74. Feron, R.C.V., W.P.M. de Ruijter and D. Oskam (1992). Ring-shedding process in the Agulhas Current system. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **97**(C6): 9467–9477.
75. Duncan, C.P. (1970). *The Agulhas Current*. Ph.D. dissertation, University of Hawaii, 76 pp.
76. Pearce, A.F., E.H. Schumann and G.S.H. Lundie (1978). Features of the shelf circulation off the Natal coast. *South African Journal of Science*, **74**(9): 328–331.
77. Christensen, M.S. (1980). Sea-surface temperature charts for Southern Africa, south of 26°S. *South African Journal of Science*, **76**(2): 541–546.
78. Engelmann, G. (1969). Christian Gottfried Ehrenberg, Ein Wegbereiter der deutschen Tiefseeforschung. *Deutsche Hydrographische Zeitschrift*, **22**(2): 145–157.
79. Sætre, R. and A. Jorge da Silva (1984). The circulation of the Mozambique Channel. *Deep-Sea Research*, **31**(5): 485–508.
80. Lutjeharms, J.R.E., N.D. Bang and C.P. Duncan (1981). Characteristics of the currents east and south of Madagascar. *Deep-Sea Research*, **28**(9): 879–899.
81. Harris, T.F.W. (1972). Sources of the Agulhas Current in the spring of 1964. *Deep-Sea Research*, **19**(9): 633–650.
82. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1976). The Agulhas Current system during the Northeast Monsoon Season. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **6**(5): 665–670.
83. Stramma, L. and R.G. Peterson (1990). The South Atlantic Current. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **20**(6): 846–859.
84. Wyrtki, K. (1971). *Oceanographic Atlas of the International Indian Ocean Expedition*. National Science Foundation, Washington, D.C. 531 pp.
85. Peterson, R.G. and L. Stramma (1991). Upper-level circulation in the South Atlantic Ocean. *Progress in Oceanography*, **26**: 1–75.
86. Gründlingh, M.L. (1983). On the course of the Agulhas Current. *South African Geographical Journal*, **65**(1): 49–57.
87. De Ruijter, W.P.M., P.J. van Leeuwen and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (1999). Generation and evolution of Natal Pulses: solitary meanders in the Agulhas Current. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **29**(12): 3043–3055.
88. Lutjeharms, J.R.E., R. Catzel and H.R. Valentine (1989). Eddies and other border phenomena of the Agulhas Current. *Continental Shelf Research*, **9**(7): 597–616.
89. Schumann, E.H. and I. Li [sic] van Heerden (1988). Observations of Agulhas Current frontal features south of Africa, October 1983. *Deep-Sea Research*, **35**(8): 1355–1362.
90. Bang, N.D. (1970). Dynamic interpretations of a detailed surface temperature chart of the Agulhas Current retroflexion [sic] and fragmentation area. *South African Geographical Journal*, **52**(12): 67–76.
91. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and R.C. van Ballegooyen (1988). The retroflexion of the Agulhas Current. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **18**(11): 1570–1583.
92. Harris, T.F.W. and D. van Forest (1978). The Agulhas Current in March 1969. *Deep-Sea Research*, **25**(6): 549–561.
93. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and J. Cooper (1996). Interbasin leakage through Agulhas Current filaments. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **43**(2): 213–238.
94. Olson, D.B. and R.H. Evans (1986). Rings of the Agulhas Current. *Deep-Sea Research*, **33**(1): 27–42.
95. Byrne, D.A., A.L. Gordon and W.F. Haxby (1995). Agulhas Eddies: a synoptic view using Geosat ERM data. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **25**(5): 902–917.
96. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and I. Anson (2001). The Agulhas

- Return Current. *Journal of Marine Systems*, **30**(1/2): 115–138.
97. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and H.R. Valentine (1984). Southern Ocean thermal fronts south of Africa. *Deep-Sea Research*, **31**(12): 1461–1476.
98. Mey, R.D., N.D. Walker and M.R. Jury (1990). Surface heat fluxes and marine boundary layer modification in the Agulhas retroflection region. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **95**(C9): 15 997–16 015.
99. Harris, T.F.W. (1970). Planetary-type waves in the South West Indian Ocean. *Nature*, **227**(5262): 1043–1044.
100. Stramma, L. (1992). The South Indian Ocean Current. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **22**(4): 421–430.
101. Stramma, L. and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (1997). The flow field of the subtropical gyre of the South Indian Ocean. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **102**(C3): 5513–5530.
102. Richardson, P.L. (1983). Gulf Stream rings. In *Eddies in Marine Science*, editor A.R. Robinson, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, pp. 19–45.
103. Watts, D.R. (1983). Gulf Stream variability. In *Eddies in Marine Science*, editor A.R. Robinson, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, pp. 114–144.
104. Gutshabash, Ye. Sh. and I.V. Lavrenov (1986). Swell transformation in the Cape [sic] Agulhas Current. *Izvestiya, Atmospheric and Oceanic Physics*, **22**(6): 494–497.
105. Fuglister, F.C. (1972). Cyclonic rings formed by the Gulf Stream 1965–1966. In: *Studies in Physical Oceanography I*, editor A.L. Gordon, Gordon and Breach, New York, pp. 137–168.
106. Joyce, T.M. (1985). Gulf Stream warm-core ring collection: an introduction. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **90**(C5): 8801–8802.
107. Lai, D.Y. and P.L. Richardson (1977). Distribution and movement of Gulf Stream rings. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **7**(5): 67–683.
108. The Ring Group (1981). Gulf Stream cold-core rings: their physics, chemistry and biology. *Science*, **212** (4499): 1091–1100.
109. Bennett, A.F. (1983). The South Pacific including the East Australian Current. In *Eddies in Marine Science*, editor A. R. Robinson, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, pp. 219–244.
110. Boland, F.M. and J.A. Church (1981). The East Australian Current 1978. *Deep-Sea Research*, **28**(9): 937–957.
111. Godfrey, J.S., G.R. Cresswell, T.J. Golding, A.F. Pearce and R. Boyd (1980). The separation of the East Australian Current. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **10**(3): 430–440.
112. Nilsson, C.S. and G.R. Cresswell (1981). The formation and evolution of East Australia Current warm-core eddies. *Progress in Oceanography*, **9**: 133–183.
113. Boland, F.M. and B.V. Hamon (1970). The East Australian Current. *Deep-Sea Research*, **17**(4): 777–794.
114. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1988). Remote sensing corroboration of retroflection of the East Madagascar Current. *Deep-Sea Research*, **35**(12): 2045–2050.
115. Peterson, R.G. (1992). The boundary currents in the western Argentine Basin. *Deep-Sea Research*, **39**(3/4): 623–644.
116. Kawai, H. (1972). Hydrography of the Kuroshio Extension. In *Kuroshio; physical aspects of the Japan Current*, editors H. Stommel and K. Yoshida, University of Washington Press, London, pp. 235–352.
117. Taft, B.A. (1978). Structure of Kuroshio south of Japan. *Journal of Marine Research*, **36**(1): 77–117.
118. Shoji, D. and H. Nitani (1966). On the variability of the velocity of the Kuroshio. *Journal of the Oceanographic Society of Japan*, **22**: 192–196.
119. Taft, B.A. (1972). Characteristics of the flow of the Kuroshio south of Japan. In *Kuroshio; physical aspects of the Japan Current*, editors H. Stommel and K. Yoshida, University of Washington Press, London, pp. 165–214.
120. Leetma, A., D.R. Quadfasel and D. Wilson (1982). Development of the flow field during the onset of the Somali Current, 1979. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **12** (12): 1325–1342.
121. Bunker, A.F. (1988). Surface energy fluxes of the South Atlantic Ocean. *Monthly Weather Review*, **116**(4): 809–823.
122. Bunker, A.F. (1980). Trends of variables and energy fluxes over the Atlantic Ocean from 1948 to 1972. *Monthly Weather Review*, **108**(6): 720–732.
123. Houghton, J.T., G.J. Jenkins and J.J. Ephraums (editors) (1990). *Climate Change. The IPCC Scientific Assessment*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 365 pp.
124. Broecker, W.S. (1987). The biggest chill. *Natural History Magazine*, **97**: 74–82.
125. Broecker, W.S., D. Peteet and D. Rind (1985). Does the ocean-atmosphere have more than one stable mode of operation? *Nature*, **315**(6014): 21–25.
126. Broecker, W.S. (1991). The great ocean conveyor. *Oceanography*, **4**(2): 79–89.
127. Duncombe Rae, C.M. (1991). Agulhas retroflection rings in the South Atlantic Ocean; an overview. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **11**: 327–344.
128. Gordon, A.L., J.R.E. Lutjeharms and M.L. Gründlingh (1987). Select hydrographic sections from the Agulhas research cruises of the research vessels *Knorr* and *Meiring Naude* - 1983. Lamont-Doherty Geological Observatory of Columbia University, *Technical Report LDGO-87-1*.
129. Van Ballegooyen, R.C., M.L. Gründlingh and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (1994). Eddy fluxes of heat and salt from the southwest Indian Ocean into the southeast Atlantic Ocean: a case study. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **99**(C7): 14 053–14 070.
130. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and R.C. van Ballegooyen (1984). Topographic control in the Agulhas Current system.



- Deep-Sea Research*, **31**(11): 1321–1337.
131. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1989). The role of mesoscale turbulence in the Agulhas Current system. In *Mesoscale/synoptic Coherent Structures in Geophysical Turbulence*, editors J.C.J. Nihoul and B.M. Jamart, Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp. 357–372.
132. Chassignet, E.P. and D.B. Boudra (1988). Dynamics of Agulhas retroflection and ring formation in a numerical model. II. Energetics and ring formation. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **18**(2): 304–319.
133. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and W.P.M. de Ruijter (1996). The influence of the Agulhas Current on the adjacent coastal zone: possible impacts of climate change. *Journal of Marine Systems*, **7**(2–4): 321–336.
134. Walker, N.D. (1990). Links between South African summer rainfall and temperature variability of the Agulhas and Benguela Current Systems. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **95**(C3): 3297–3319.
135. Jury, M.R. and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (1993). Die struktuur en die aandrywingskragte van die 1991–1992 droogte in suidelike Afrika. *Suid-Afrikaanse Tydskrif vir Natuurwetenskap en Tegnologie*, **12**(1): 8–16.
136. Jury, M.R., B. Pathack, C.J. de W [sic] Rautenbach and J. vanHeerden [sic] (1996). Drought over South Africa and Indian Ocean SST: statistical and GCM results. *The Global Atmosphere and Ocean System*, **4**(1):47–63.
137. Jury, M.R. and M. Majodina (1997). Preliminary climatology of southern Africa extreme weather 1973–1992. *Theoretical and Applied Climatology*, **56**(1–2): 103–112.
138. Tennant, W.J. (1996). Influence of Indian Ocean sea-surface temperature anomalies on the general circulation of southern Africa. *South African Journal of Science*, **92**(6): 289–295.
139. Crimp, S.J., J.R.E. Lutjeharms and S.J. Mason (1998). Sensitivity of a tropical-temperate trough to sea-surface temperature anomalies in the Agulhas retroflection region. *Water SA*, **24**(2): 93–101.
140. Reason, C.J.C. and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (1998). Variability of the South Indian Ocean and implications for southern African rainfall. *South African Journal of Science*, **94**(3): 115–123.
141. Reason, C.J.C., C.R. Godfred-Spenning, R.J. Allan and J.A. Lindesay (1998). Air–sea interaction mechanisms and low frequency climate variability in the South Indian Ocean region. *International Journal of Climatology*, **18**(4) : 391–405.
142. Lutjeharms, J.R.E., R.D. Mey and I.T. Hunter (1986). Cloud lines over the Agulhas Current. *South African Journal of Science*, **82**(11/12): 635–640.
143. Lutjeharms, J.R.E., and M. Rouault (2000). Observations of cloud formation above Agulhas Current intrusions in the South-east Atlantic. *South African Journal of Science*, **96**(11/12): 577–580.
144. Rouault, M. and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (1994). Air–sea interaction in the marine atmosphere boundary layer: a new South African research venture. *South African Journal of Science*, **90**(1): 11–12.
145. Lee-Thorp, A.M., M. Rouault and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (1998). Cumulus cloud formation above the Agulhas Current. *South African Journal of Science*, **94**(7): 351–354.
146. Lee-Thorp, A.M., M. Rouault and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (1999). Moisture uptake in the boundary layer above the Agulhas Current: a case study. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **104**(C1): 1423–1430.
147. Walker, N.D. and R.D. Mey (1988). Ocean/atmosphere heat fluxes within the Agulhas Retroflection region. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **93**(C12): 15473–15483.
148. Jury, M.(R.) and N. Walker (1988). Marine boundary layer modification across the edge of the Agulhas Current. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **93**(C1): 647–654.
149. Jury, M.R., H.R. Valentine and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (1993). Influence of the Agulhas Current on summer rainfall on the southeast coast of South Africa. *Journal of Applied Meteorology*, **32**(7): 1282–1287.
150. Ryan, P.G. (1988). The characteristics and distribution of plastic particles at the sea-surface off the southwestern Cape Province, South Africa. *Marine Environmental Research*, **25**(4): 249–273.
151. Heydorn, A.E.F., N.D. Bang, A.F. Pearce, B.W. Flemming, R.A. Carter, M.H. Schleyer, P.F. Berry, G.R. Hughes, A.J. Bass, J.H. Wallace, R.P. van der Elst, R.J.M. Crawford and P.A. Shelton (1978). Ecology of the Agulhas Current region: an assessment of biological responses to environmental parameters in the South-West Indian Ocean. *Transactions of the Royal Society of South Africa*, **43**(2): 151–190.
152. Hughes, G.R. (1975). The marine turtles of Tongaland. *Lammergeyer*, **22**: 9–18.
153. Randall, R.M., B.M. Randall and D. Baird (1981). Speed of movement of Jackass penguins over long distances and their possible use of ocean currents. *South African Journal of Science*, **77**(9): 420–421.
154. Findlay, K.P., P.B. Best, G.J.B. Ross and V.G. Cockcroft (1992). The distribution of small odontocete cetaceans off the coasts of South Africa and Namibia. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **12**: 237–270.
155. Prell, W.L. and W.H. Hutson (1979). Zonal temperature-anomaly maps of Indian Ocean surface waters – modern and ice-age patterns. *Science*, **206**(4417): 454–456.
156. De Decker, A.H.B. (1984). Near-surface copepod distribution in the south-western Indian and south-eastern Atlantic Ocean. *Annals of the South African Museum*, **93**(5): 303–370.
157. Lazarus, B.I. and D. Dowler (1979). Pelagic tunicata off the west and south-west coasts of South Africa, 1964–1965. *Fisheries Bulletin*, **12**: 93–119.
158. Schleyer, M.H. (1985). Chaetognaths as indicators of water masses in the Agulhas Current system. *Investigations Reports, Oceanographic Research Institute*,

- Durban*, **61**: 1–20.
159. De Decker, A.H.B. (1973). Agulhas Bank plankton. In *The Biology of the Indian Ocean*, editor B. Zeitzschel, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, pp. 189–219.
  160. Prell, W., W. Hutson, D. Williams, A. Bé, K. Geitzenauer and B. Molfine (1980). Surface circulation of the Indian Ocean during the last glacial maximum, approximately 18 000 yr. B.P. *Quaternary Research*, **14**(3): 309–336.
  161. Hulley, P.A. and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (1995). The south-western limit for the warm water, mesopelagic ichthyofauna of the Indo-West Pacific: Lanternfish (*Myctophidae*), a case study. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **15**: 185–205.
  162. Nafpaktitis, B.G. (1978). Systematics and distribution of lanternfishes of the genera *Lobianchia* – and *Diaphus* (*Myctophidae*) in the Indian Ocean, *Scientific Bulletin, Natural History Museum, Los Angeles*, **30**: 1–91.
  163. Lutjeharms, J.R.E., M.L. Gründlingh and R.A. Carter (1989). Topographically induced upwelling in the Natal Bight. *South African Journal of Science*, **85**(5): 310–316.
  164. Lutjeharms, J.R.E., H.R. Valentine and R.C. van Ballegooyen (2000). The hydrography and water masses of the Natal Bight, South Africa. *Continental Shelf Research*, **20**(14): 1907–1939.
  165. Lutjeharms, J.R.E., A.A. Meyer, I.J. Ansorge, G.A. Eagle and M.J. Orren (1997). The nutrient characteristics of the Agulhas Bank. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **17**: 253–274.
  166. Lutjeharms, J.R.E., J. Cooper and M. Roberts (2000). Upwelling at the inshore edge of the Agulhas Current. *Continental Shelf Research*, **20**(7): 737–761.
  167. Gill, A.E. and E.H. Schumann (1979). Topographically induced changes in the structure of an inertial coastal jet: application to the Agulhas Current. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **9**(5): 975–991.
  168. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and A.A. Meyer (2006). On the origin and circulation of bottom water on the Agulhas Bank, South Africa. *Continental Shelf Research*, in preparation.
  169. Meyer, A.A., J.R.E. Lutjeharms and S. de Villiers (2002). The nutrient characteristics of the Natal Bight, South Africa. *Journal of Marine Systems*, **35**(1–2): 11–37.
  170. Weeks, S.J. and F.A. Shillington (1994). Interannual scales of variation of pigment concentrations from coastal zone colour scanner data in the Benguela upwelling system and the Subtropical Convergence zone south of Africa. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **99**(C4): 7385–7399.
  171. Mallory, J.K. (1984). Abnormal waves off the south-east coast of South Africa. *Marine Observer*, **54**(283): 29–38.
  172. Schumann, E.H. (1976). Changes in energy of surface gravity waves in the Agulhas Current. *Deep-Sea Research*, **23**(6): 509–518.
  173. Irvine, D.E. and D.G. Tilley (1988). Ocean wave directional spectra and wave-current interaction in the Agulhas from the Shuttle Imaging Radar-B synthetic aperture radar. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **93**(C12): 15 389–15 401.
  174. Gründlingh, M.L. (1994). Some characteristics of satellite-derived wave heights in the South Atlantic Ocean. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **41**(2): 413–428.
  175. Gründlingh, M.L. (1994). Evidence of surface wave enhancement in the southwest Indian Ocean. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **99**(C4): 7917–7927.
  176. Hirst, A.C. and J.S. Godfrey (1993). The role of Indonesian throughflow in a global ocean GCM. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **23**(6): 1057–1086.
  177. Deutsches Hydrographisches Institut (1960). *Monatskarten für den Indischen Ozean*. Deutsches Hydrographisches Institut, Hamburg, Public. 2422.
  178. Wyrtki, K. (1973). Physical oceanography of the Indian Ocean. In *Biology of the Indian Ocean*, editor B. Zeitzschel, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, pp. 18–36.
  179. Cresswell, G.R. and T.J. Golding (1980). Observations of a south-flowing current in the south-eastern Indian Ocean. *Deep-Sea Research*, **27**(6): 449–466.
  180. Smith, R.L., A. Huyer, J.S. Godfrey and J.A. Church (1991). The Leeuwin Current off western Australia. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **21**(2): 323–345.
  181. McCartney, M.S. (1977). Subantarctic Mode Water. *Deep-Sea Research*, **24** (Supplement): 103–119.
  182. You, Y. (1996). Dianeutral mixing in the thermocline of the Indian Ocean. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **43**(3): 291–320.
  183. Cheney, R.A., J.G. Marsh and B.D. Beckley (1983). Global mesoscale variability from collinear tracks of SEASAT altimeter data. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **88**(C7): 4343–4354.
  184. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1977). The need for oceanological research in the South-west Indian Ocean. *South African Journal of Science*, **73**(2): 40–43.
  185. Ramage, C.S. (1984). Climate of the Indian Ocean north of 35°S. In *Climates of the Oceans*, editor H. van Loon, World Survey of Climatology, Volume 15, Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp. 693–697.
  186. Taljaard, J.J. and H. van Loon (1984). Climate of the Indian Ocean south of 35°S. In *Climates of the Oceans*, editor H. van Loon, World Survey of Climatology Volume 15, Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp. 505–601.
  187. Hellerman, S. and M. Rosenstein (1993). Normal monthly wind stress over the world ocean with error estimates. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **13**(7): 1093–1104.
  188. Gill, A.E. (1977). Coastally trapped waves in the atmosphere. *Quarterly Journal of the Royal Meteorological Society*, **103**(437): 431–440.
  189. Schumann, E.H. (1989). The propagation of air pressure and wind systems along the South African coast. *South African Journal of Science*, **85**(6): 382–385.
  190. Schumann, E.H. and J.A. Martin (1991). Climato-

- logical aspects of the coastal wind field at Cape Town, Port Elizabeth and Durban. *South African Geographical Journal*, **73**(1): 48–51.
191. Naval Oceanographic Office (1977). *Surface Currents. Southeast South Atlantic Ocean*. U.S. Naval Oceanographic Office, Special Publication 1401-SA4.
192. Naval Oceanographic Office (1977). *Surface Currents. West Central Indian Ocean Including Mozambique Channel*. U.S. Naval Oceanographic Office, Special Publication 1404-IN3.
193. Naval Oceanographic Office (1977). *Surface Currents. Southwest Indian Ocean*. U.S. Naval Oceanographic Office, Special Publication. 1404-IN6.
194. United Kingdom Hydrographic Office (1970). *Routing Charts – Indian Ocean*. British Admiralty, Hydrographic Office, London, No.5126.
195. Reid, J.L. (1989). On the total geostrophic circulation of the South Atlantic Ocean: flow patterns, tracers and transports. *Progress in Oceanography*, **23**(3): 149–244.
196. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1982). Die geskiedkundige ontwikkeling van fisiese navorsing oor die oseane grensend aan Suider-Afrika. *Suid-Afrikaanse Tydskrif vir Natuurwetenskap en Tegnologie*, **1**(1): 42–52.
197. Buchan, A. (1895). Report on oceanic circulations based on observations made on board H.M.S. Challenger and other observations. *Challenger Reports*, II (Physics and Chemistry). Part VIII, appendix to Summary, 38 pp.
198. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and G. Kortum (2005). German research on the Agulhas Current system between the World Wars; a lost scientific achievement. *Historisch-meereskundliches Jahrbuch*, in preparation.
199. Harries, H.D. (1932). Über die Veränderlichkeit von Monatswerten meteorologischer und hydrologischer Elementen der Äquatorialsee. *Annalen der Hydrographie, Berlin*, **60**(12): 496–499.
200. Becker, R. (1938). Über den jährlichen Temperaturgang auf dem Indischen und Stillen Ozean. *Annalen der Hydrographie, Berlin*, **66**(7): 338–340.
201. Lütgens, R. (1905). Oberflächentemperaturen im südlichen Indischen Ozean 1901 bis 1903. *Annalen der Hydrographie Berlin*, **33**(11): 498–513.
202. Schott, G. (1928). Die Verteilung des Salzgehaltes im Oberflächenwasser der Ozeane. *Annalen der Hydrographie, Berlin*, **5**: 145–166.
203. Van Riel, P.M. (1932). Einige ozeanographische Beobachtungen im Roten Meer, Golf van Aden und Indischen Ozean. *Annalen der Hydrographie, Berlin*, **60**(10): 401–407.
204. Willimzik, M. (1929). Die Strömungen im Subtropischen Konvergenzgebiet des Indischen Ozeans. *Veröffentlichungen des Instituts für Meereskunde an der Universität Berlin, n.f. A*(14): 1–27.
205. Defant, A. (1936). Ausbreitung- und Vermischungsvorgänge im antarktischen Bodenstrom und im subantarktischen Zwischenwasser. *'Meteor' Forschungsergebnisse*, **6**(2): 53–96.
206. Defant, A. (1941). Die absolute Topografie des physikalischen Meeresspiegels und der Druckflächen sowie die Wasserbewegung im Atlantischen Ozean. *'Meteor' Forschungsergebnisse*, **6**(2): 191–260.
207. Defant, A. (1941). Die relative Topografie einzelner Druckflächen im Atlantischen Ozean. *'Meteor' Forschungsergebnisse*, **6**(2/4): 183–190.
208. Schott, G. (1944). *Geographie des Atlantischen Ozeans*. C. Boysen, 438 pp., 38 plates.
209. Schott, G. (1926). Die Tiefenwasserbewegung des Indischen Ozeans. *Annalen der Hydrographie, Berlin*, **54**(2): 417–431.
210. Wüst, G. (1935). Zur Frage des Indischen Tiefenstroms. *Naturwissenschaften*, **23**(9): 137–139.
211. Wüst, G. (1934). Anzeichen von Beziehungen zwischen Bodenstrom und Relief in der Tiefsee des Indischen Ozeans. *Naturwissenschaften*, **22**(16): 241–244.
212. Wüst, G. (1935). Die Ausbreitung des antarktischen Bodenwassers im Atlantischen und Indischen Ozean. *Zeitschrift zur Geophysik*, **11**: 40–49.
213. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and G. Kortum (2003). The influence of German marine research on South African physical oceanography since 1890. *Historisch-meereskundliches Jahrbuch*, **9**: 81–100.
214. Clowes, A.J. (1950). An introduction to the hydrology of South African waters. Fisheries and Marine, Biological Survey Division, Union of South Africa, *Investigational Reports*, **12**: 42 pp.
215. Darbyshire, J. (1964). A hydrological investigation of the Agulhas Current area. *Deep-Sea Research*, **11**(5): 781–815.
216. Shannon, L.V. (1966). Hydrology of the South and West coasts of South Africa. *Investigational Report, Division of Sea Fisheries*, **58**: 1–52.
217. Darbyshire, M. (1966). Agulhas Current (and Mozambique Current). In *The Encyclopaedia of Oceanography*, editor R. W. Fairbridge, Reinhold Publishing Corporation, New York, pp. 23–28.
218. Park, Y.-H. and L. Gambèroni (1995). Large-scale circulation and its variability in the South Indian Ocean from TOPEX/POSEIDON altimetry. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **100**(C12): 24 911–24 929.
219. Field, A., J.M. Toole and W.D. Wilson (1997). Seasonal circulation in the South Indian Ocean. *Geophysical Research Letters*, **24**(22): 2773–2776.
220. Emery, W.J. and J. Meincke (1986). Global water masses: summary and review. *Oceanologica Acta*, **9**(4): 383–391.
221. Pollak, M.J. (1958). Frequency distribution of potential temperatures and salinities in the Indian Ocean. *Deep-Sea Research*, **5**(2): 128–133.
222. Anonymous (1965). Development of the International Indian Ocean Expedition. *International Indian Ocean Expedition, Collected Reprints*, **I**: ix–xi.
223. Wüst, G. (1960). Proposed International Indian Ocean Expedition, 1962–1863. *Deep-Sea Research*, **6**(3): 245–249.

224. Deacon, G.E.R. (1960). The Indian Ocean Expedition. *Nature*, **187**(4737): 561–562.
225. Knauss, J.A. (1961). The International Indian Ocean Expedition. *Science*, **134**(3491): 1674–1676.
226. Anonymous (1970). Symposium 'Oceanography in South Africa 1970', South African National Committee for Oceanographic Research, Durban.
227. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1991). Twintig jaar fisiese oseanologie in Suid-Afrika: 'n persoonlike beskouing. *South African Journal for Marine Research*, **10**: 305–320.
228. Schumann, E.H., J.R.E. Lutjeharms, A.J. Boyd, M.L. Gründlingh and G.B. Brundrit (1991). Physical oceanography in South Africa: 1987 to 1990. *South African Journal of Science*, **87**(10): 486–492.
229. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and F.P. Anderson (1987). The World Ocean Circulation Experiment (WOCE): a South African perspective. *South African Journal of Science*, **83**(1): 10–14.
230. Gordon, A.L., J.R.E. Lutjeharms and M.L. Gründlingh (1987). Stratification and circulation at the Agulhas Retroflection. *Deep-Sea Research*, **34**(4): 565–599.
231. Chapman, P. (1988). On the occurrence of oxygen-depleted water south of Africa and its implications for Agulhas–Atlantic mixing. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **7**: 267–294.
232. Warren, B.A. (1981). The shallow oxygen minimum of the South Indian Ocean. *Deep-Sea Research*, **28**(8): 859–864.
233. Rochford, D. (1964). Salinity maximum in the upper 1000 waters of the north Indian Ocean. *Australian Journal of Marine and Freshwater Research*, **15**(1): 1–24.
234. Clowes, A.J. and G.E.R. Deacon (1935). The deep-water circulation of the Indian Ocean. *Nature*, **136** (3450): 936–938.
235. Gründlingh, M.L. (1985). Occurrence of Red Sea Water in the Southwestern Indian Ocean, 1981. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **15**(2): 207–212.
236. Valentine, H.R., J.R.E. Lutjeharms and G.B. Brundrit (1993). The water masses and volumetry of the southern Agulhas Current region. *Deep-Sea Research*, **40**(6): 1285–1305.
237. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1991). The temperature/salinity relationships of the South West Indian Ocean. *South African Geographer*, **18**(1/2): 15–31.
238. Mantyla, A.W. and J.L. Reid (1995). On the origins of deep and bottom waters of the Indian Ocean. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **100**(C2): 2417–2439.
239. Warren, B.A. (1981). Transindian hydrographic section at Lat. 18°S: Property distributions and circulation in the South Indian Ocean. *Deep-Sea Research*, **28**(8): 759–788.
240. Kolla, V., L. Sullivan, S.S. Streeter and M.G. Langseth (1976). Spreading of Antarctic Bottom Water and its effects on the floor of the Indian Ocean inferred from bottom-water potential temperature, turbidity, and sea-floor photography. *Marine Geology*, **21**: 171–189.
241. Park, Y.-H. and L. Gambéroni (1997). Cross-frontal exchanges of Antarctic Intermediate Water and Antarctic Bottom Water in the Crozet Basin. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **44**(5): 963–986.
242. Sparrow, M.D., K.J. Heywood, J. Brown and D.P. Stevens (1996). Current structure of the south Indian Ocean. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **101**(C3): 6377–6391.
243. Read, J.F. and R.T. Pollard (1999). Deep inflow into the Mozambique Basin. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **104**(C2): 3075–3090.
244. Warren, B.A. (1974). Deep flow in the Madagascar and Mascarene basins. *Deep-Sea Research*, **21**(1): 1–21.
245. Fieux, M., F. Schott and J.C. Swallow (1986). Deep boundary currents in the western Indian Ocean revisited. *Deep-Sea Research*, **33**(4): 415–526.
246. Swallow, J.C. and R.T. Pollard (1988). Flow of bottom water through the Madagascar Basin. *Deep-Sea Research*, **35**(8): 1437–1440.
247. Boddem, J. and R. Schlitzer (1995). Interocean exchange and meridional mass and heat fluxes in the South Atlantic. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **100**(C8): 15 821–15 834.
248. Metzl, N., B. Moore and A. Poisson (1990). Resolving the intermediate and deep convective flows in the Indian Ocean by using temperature, salinity, oxygen and phosphate data: the interplay of biogeochemical and geophysical tracers. *Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology*, **89**(1–2): 81–111.
249. Toole, J.M. and B.A. Warren (1993). A hydrographic section across the subtropical South Indian Ocean. *Deep-Sea Research*, **40**(10): 1973–2019.
250. Shannon, L.V. and D. Hunter (1988). Notes on Antarctic Intermediate Water around Southern Africa. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **6**: 107–117.
251. Colborn, J.G. (1975). *The thermal structure of the Indian Ocean*. International Indian Ocean Expedition Oceanographic Monographs, Number 2, An East-west Center Book, The University Press of Hawai'i, Honolulu, 173 pp.
252. Fine, R.A. (1993). Circulation of Antarctic Intermediate Water in the South Indian Ocean. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **40**(10): 2021–2042.
253. Boebel, O., C. Duncombe Rae, S. Garzoli, J. Lutjeharms, P. Richardson, T. Rossby, C. Schmid and W. Zenk (1997). Float experiment studies interocean exchanges at the tip of Africa. *Eos, Transactions of the American Geophysical Union*, **79**(1): 1, 7–8.
254. Lutjeharms, J.R.E., O. Boebel and T. Rossby (1997). KAPEX: an international experiment to study deep water movement around southern Africa. *South African Journal of Science*, **93**(9): 377–381.
255. Tomczak, M. (1984). Ausbreitung und Vermischung der Zentralwassermassen in den Tropengebieten der Ozeane. 2. Indischer und Pazifischer Ozean. *Oceanologica Acta*, **7**(3): 271–288.
256. You, Y. and M. Tomczak (1993). Thermocline circu-



- lation and ventilation in the Indian Ocean derived from water mass analysis. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **40**(1): 13–56.
257. You, Y. (1998). Dianeutral mixing and transformation of Antarctic Intermediate Water in the Indian Ocean. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **103**(C13): 30 941–30 971.
258. Swallow, J.C., F. Schott and M. Fieux (1991). Structure and transport of the East African Coastal Current *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **96**(C12): 22 245–22 257.
259. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1972). A quantitative assessment of year-to-year variability in water movement in the Southwest Indian Ocean. *Nature*, **239**(91): 59–69.
260. Villacastin-Herrero, C.A., L.G. Underhill, R.J.M. Crawford and L.V. Shannon (1996). Sea surface temperature of oceans surrounding subequatorial Africa: seasonal patterns, spatial coherence and long-term trends. *South African Journal of Science*, **92**(4): 189–197.
261. Weeks, S.J., F.A. Shillington and G.B. Brundrit (1998). Seasonal and spatial SST variability in the Agulhas retroflection and Agulhas return current. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **45**(10): 1611–1625.
262. Lutjeharms, J.R.E., M.I. Lucas, R. Perissinotto, R.C. van Ballegooyen and M. Rouault (1994). Oceanic processes at the Subtropical Convergence: report of research cruise SAAMES III. *South African Journal of Science*, **90**(7): 367–370.
263. Gründlingh, M.L. (1987). On the seasonal temperature variation in the southwestern Indian Ocean. *South African Geographical Journal*, **69**(2): 129–138.
264. Holland, W.R. (1978). The role of mesoscale eddies in the general circulation in the ocean – numerical experiments using a wind-driven quasigeostrophic model. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **8**(3): 363–392.
265. Holland, W.R., V. Zlotnicki and L.-L. Fu (1991). Modelled time-dependent flow in the Agulhas retroflection region as deduced from altimeter data assimilation. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **10**: 407–427.
266. Luther, M.E. and J.J. O'Brien (1989). Modelling the variability in the Somali Current. In *Mesoscale/Synoptic Coherent Structures in Geophysical Turbulence*, editors J.C.J. Nihoul and B.M. Jamart, Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp. 373–386.
267. Woodberry, K.E., M.E. Luther and J.J. O'Brien (1989). The wind-driven seasonal circulation in the southern tropical Indian Ocean. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **94**(C12): 17 985–18 002.
268. Matano, R.P. (1996). A numerical study of the Agulhas retroflection: the role of bottom topography. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **26**(10): 2267–2279.
269. Matano, R.P., C.G. Simionato, W.P.(M.) de Ruijter, P.J. van Leeuwen [sic], P.T. Strub, D.B. Chelton and M.G. Schlax (1998). Seasonal variability in the Agulhas Retroflection region. *Geophysical Research Letters*, **25**(23): 4361–4364.
270. Matano, R.P., C.G. Simionato and P.T. Strub (1999). Modelling the wind driven variability of the South Indian Ocean. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **29**(2): 217–230.
271. Biastoch, A. (1998). Zirkulation und Dynamik in der Agulhasregion anhand eines numerischen Modells. *Berichte aus dem Institut für Meereskunde an der Christian-Albrechts-Universität, Kiel*, **301**, 118 pp.
272. FRAM Group (1991). An eddy-resolving model of the Southern Ocean. *Eos, Transactions of the American Geophysical Union*, **72**(15): 169, 174–175.
273. Semtner, A.J. and R.M. Chervin (1988). A simulation of the global ocean circulation with resolved eddies. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **93**(C12): 15 502–15 522. 420.
274. Semtner, A.J. and R.M. Chervin (1992). Ocean general circulation from a global eddy-resolving model. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **97**(C4): 5493–5550.
275. Wilkin, J.L. and R.A. Morrow (1994). Eddy kinetic energy and momentum flux in the Southern Ocean: comparison of a global eddy-resolving model with altimeter, drifter, and current-meter data. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **99**(C4): 7903–7916.
276. Lutjeharms, J.R.E., D.J. Webb and B.A. de Cuevas (1991). Applying the Fine Resolution Antarctic Model (FRAM) to the ocean circulation around southern Africa. *South African Journal of Science*, **87**(8): 346–349.
277. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and D.J. Webb (1995). Modelling the Agulhas Current system with FRAM (*Fine Resolution Antarctic Model*). *Deep-Sea Research I*, **42**(4): 523–551.
278. Jacobs, S.S. and D.T. Georgi (1977). Observations on the Southwest Indian/Antarctic Ocean. *Deep-Sea Research*, **24** (supplement): 43–84.
279. Reason, C.J.C., R.J. Allan and J.A. Lindesay (1996). Evidence for the influence of remote forcing on interdecadal variability in the southern Indian Ocean. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **101**(C5): 11 867–11 882.
280. Reason, C.J.C., R.J. Allan and J.A. Lindesay (1996). Dynamical response of the oceanic circulation and temperature to interdecadal variability in the surface winds over the Indian Ocean. *Journal of Climate*, **9**(1): 97–114.
281. Berghaus, H. (1845). *Physikalischer Atlas*. Erster Band. Verlag J. Perthes, Gotha, 234 pp.
282. Kerhallet, M.C.P. de (1851). Considérations générales sur l'océan Indien. *Annales Hydrographiques*, **2e Sem**, pp. 219–264.
283. Petermann, A. (1850). *Atlas of Physical Geography*. Wm. S. Orr and Co., London, 124 pp., 15 plates.
284. Petermann, A. (1865). Karte der Arktischen und Antarktischen Regimen zur Übersicht des geographischen Standpunctes im Jahre 1865. *Petermanns Mitteilungen*, Tafel 5.
285. Pearce, A.F. (1980). Early observations and historical notes on the Agulhas Current circulation. *Transactions of the Royal Society of South Africa*, **44**(2): 205–212.

286. Barlow, E.W. (1931). Currents in the western portion of the Indian Ocean. I – Introduction. *Marine Observer*, **8**(90): 130–132.
287. Barlow, E.W. (1931). Currents in the western portion of the Indian Ocean. II – Currents during the S.W. Monsoon period. *Marine Observer*, **8**(93): 193–194.
288. Barlow, E.W. (1931). Currents in the western portion of the Indian Ocean. III – Currents during the N.E. Monsoon period (northern winter and southern summer) and general summary. *Marine Observer*, **8**(96): 254–259.
289. Barlow, E.W. (1933). Currents in the southern Indian Ocean, winter season. *Marine Observer*, **10**(111): 99.
290. Barlow, E.W. (1933). Currents in the southern Indian Ocean, summer season and general summary. *Marine Observer*, **10**(112): 132–135.
291. Barlow, E.W. (1935). The 1910 to 1935 survey of the currents of the Indian Ocean and China Seas. *Marine Observer*, **12**(120): 153–163.
292. Pearce, A.F. and M.L. Gründlingh (1982). Is there a seasonal variation in the Agulhas Current? *Journal of Marine Research*, **40**(1): 177–184.
293. Lutjeharms, J.R.E., P.M. Wedepohl and J.M. Meeuwis (2000). On the surface drift of the East Madagascar and the Mozambique Currents. *South African Journal of Science*, **96**(3): 141–147.
294. Bang, N.D. (1973). Oceanography: Oceanographic Environment of Southern Africa. In *Standard Encyclopaedia of Southern Africa*, editors J. J. Spies and P.C. du Plessis, Vol.8, Nasou, Cape Town, pp. 282–286.
295. Swallow, J.C., M. Fieux and F. Schott (1988). The boundary currents east and north of Madagascar. Part I. Geostrophic currents and transports. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **93**(C5): 4951–4962.
296. Duncan, C.P. and S.G. Schladow (1981). World surface currents from ship's drift observations. *International Hydrographic Review*, **58**(2): 101–112.
297. Schott, F., M. Fieux, J. Kindle, J. Swallow and R. Zantopp (1988). The boundary currents east and north of Madagascar. Part II. Direct measurements and model comparisons. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **93**(C5): 4963–4974.
298. Piton, B. and J.F. Poulain (1974). Resultat des mesures de courant superficiels au GEK effectuees avec le N.O. "Vauban" dans le sud-ouest de l'ocean Indien, 1973–74. *ORSTOM Centre de Nosy, Bé, Document Scientifique*, **47**, 77 pp.
299. Biastoch, A., C.J.C. Reason, J.R.E. Lutjeharms and O. Boebel (1999). The importance of flow in the Mozambique Channel to the seasonality in greater Agulhas Current system. *Geophysical Research Letters*, **26**(21): 3321–3324.
300. Fu, L.-L. (1986). Mass, heat and freshwater fluxes in the South Indian Ocean. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **16**(10): 1683–1693.
301. Biastoch, A. and W. Krauss (1999). The role of meso-scale eddies in the source regions of the Agulhas Current. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **29**(9): 2303–2317.
302. Read, J.F. and R.T. Pollard (1993). Structure and transport of the Antarctic Circumpolar Current and Agulhas Return Current at 40°E. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **98**(C7): 12 281–12 295.
303. Lutjeharms, J.R.E., C.-T. Liu, W.-S. Chuan and C.-Z. Shyu (1993). On some similarities between the oceanic circulations off Southern Africa and off Taiwan. *South African Journal of Science*, **89**(8): 367–371.
304. Lutjeharms, J.R.E., and E. Machu (2000). An upwelling cell inshore of the East Madagascar Current. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **47**(12): 2405–2411.
305. Gordon, A.L., K.-I. Horai and M. Donn (1983). Southern hemisphere western boundary current variability revealed by GEOS 3 altimeter. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **88**(1): 755–762.
306. Haines, M., M. Luther, Z. Ji and R. Fine (1995). Particle trajectories in an Indian Ocean Model. In *1995 U. S. WOCE Report*, U. S. WOCE Implementation Report Number 10, pp. 34–35.
307. Gründlingh, M.L. (1989). Drift of the SAA Helderberg wreckage in the Indian Ocean. *South African Journal of Science*, **85**(4): 209–211.
308. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1988). On the role of the East Madagascar Current as a source of the Agulhas Current. *South African Journal of Science*, **84**(4): 236–238.
309. Gründlingh, M.L., R.A. Carter and R.C. Stanton (1991). Circulation and water properties of the Southwest Indian Ocean, Spring 1987. *Progress in Oceanography*, **28**(4): 305–342.
310. Patterson, S.L. (1985). Surface circulation and kinetic energy distribution in the southern hemisphere oceans from FGGE drifting buoys. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **15**(7): 865–884.
311. Daniault, N. and Y. Menard (1985). Eddy kinetic energy distribution in the Southern Ocean from altimetry and FGGE drifting buoys. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **90**(C6): 18 877–11 889.
312. Kingwill, D.G. (1990). *The CSIR, the first 40 years*. CSIR, Pretoria, 352 pp.
313. Carte, A.E. (1989). An informal historical review of the National Physical Research Laboratory. *South African Journal of Science*, **85**(2): 76–79.
314. Natal Regional Research Committee (1961). *Marine studies off the Natal coast*. Council for Scientific and Industrial Research, CSIR Symposium **S2**, 134 pp.
315. Anderson, F.P., M.L. Gründlingh and C.C. Stavropoulos (1988). Kinematics of the southern Natal coastal circulation: some historic measurements 1962–63. *South African Journal of Science*, **84**(10): 857–860.
316. Anderson, F.P. (1972). Circulation patterns along the east coast (coastal zone and open ocean) in relation to pollution. *South African Journal of Science*, **68**(5): 121–123.
317. Gründlingh, M.L., C.C. Stavropoulos and L.J. Watt (1988). The R.V. Meiring Naudé: Two decades of sup-

- port to physical oceanography. *South African Journal of Science*, **84**(9): 746–748.
318. CSIR (1985). *A decade in oceanology. Activities of the National Research Institute for Oceanology, 1974–1984*. Council for Scientific and Industrial Research, Stellenbosch, CSIR Report T/SEA 8514, 28 pp.
319. CSIR (1988). *CSIR. Review of activities in oceanology, 1985–1987*. Council for Scientific and Industrial Research, Stellenbosch, 40 pp.
320. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1992). Hoe gaan dit met die fisiese oseanologie in Suid-Afrika? *South African Journal of Science*, **88**(2): 73.
321. Schumann, E.H. (1988). Physical oceanography off Natal. In *Coastal Ocean Studies off Natal, South Africa*, editor E. H. Schumann, Lecture Notes on Coastal and Estuarine Studies 26, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, pp. 101–130.
322. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and J.A. Thomson (1993). Commercializing the CSIR and the death of science. *South African Journal of Science*, **89**(1): 8–14.
323. Gründlingh, M.L., G.W. Bailey, F.A. Shillington, E.H. Schumann and J.J. Agenbag (1995). Physical oceanographic activities in South Africa. 1991–1994. *South African Journal of Science*, **91**(5): 247–254.
324. Warren, B.A. (1978). Bottom water transport through the Southwest Indian Ridge. *Deep-Sea Research*, **25**(3): 315–321.
325. Maltrud, M.E., R.D. Smith, A.J. Semtner and R.C. Malone (1998). Global eddy-resolving ocean simulations driven by 1985–1995 atmospheric winds. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **103**(C13): 30 825–30 853.
326. Piton, B. (1989). Quelques aspects nouveaux sur la circulation superficielle dans le canal de Mozambique (Océan Indien). *Document Scientifique, Centre Brest ORSTOM*, **54**: 31 pp.
327. Piton, B., J.-H. Pointeau and J.-S. Nigoumbi (1981). Atlas hydrologique du Canal de Mozambique (Océan Indien). *Travaux et Documents de l'ORSTOM*, **132**: 41 pp.
328. Menache, M. (1963). Première Campagne océanographique du “Commandant Robert Giraud” dans le Canal de Mozambique 11 Octobre–28 Novembre 1957. *Cahiers Océanographiques*, **15**(4): 224–235.
329. Donguy, J.R. and B. Piton (1969). Aperçu des conditions hydrologiques de la partie nord du Canal de Mozambique. *Cahiers O.R.S.T.O.M., série Océanographie*, **7**(2): 3–26.
330. Donguy, J.R. (1975). Les eaux superficielles tropicales de la partie occidentale de l’Océan Indien en 1966–1967. *Cahiers O.R.S.T.O.M.*, **13**(1): 31–47.
331. Zahn, W. (1984). Eine Abschätzung des Volumentransportes im Kanal von Moçambique während des Zeitraumes Oktober–November 1957. *Beiträge zur Meereskunde*, **51**: 67–74.
332. Sætre, R. (1985). Surface currents in the Mozambique Channel. *Deep-Sea Research*, **32**(12): 1457–1467.
333. Zahn, W. (1984). Influence of bottom topography on currents in the Mozambique Channel. *Tropical Ocean–Atmosphere Newsletter*, **26**: 22–23.
334. DiMarco, S.F., W.D. Nowlin and P. Chapman (1998). Properties and transport of the Mozambique Channel. In *1998 U. S. WOCE Report*, U. S. WOCE Implementation Report Number 10, pp. 34–35.
335. Naeije, M.C., K.F. Wakker, R. Scharoo and B.C.C. Ambrosius (1992). Observation of mesoscale ocean currents from GEOSAT altimeter data. *ISPRS Journal of Photogrammetry and Remote Sensing*, **47**: 347–368.
336. Nehring, D. (editor) (1984). The oceanological conditions in the western part of the Mozambique Channel in February–March 1980. *Geodätische und geophysikalische Veröffentlichungen*, **4**(9): 163 pp.
337. Schemainda, R. and E. Hagen (1983). On steady state intermediate vertical currents induced by the Mozambique Current. *Océanographie Tropicale*, **18**(1): 81–88.
338. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and A. Jorge da Silva (1988). The Delagoa Bight eddy. *Deep-Sea Research*, **35**(4): 619–634.
339. Gründlingh, M.L. (1992). Agulhas Current meanders: review and a case study. *South African Geographical Journal*, **74**(1): 19–28.
340. Gründlingh, M.L. (1993). On the winter flow in the southern Mozambique Channel. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **40**(2): 409–418.
341. Martin, A.K. (1981). Evolution of the Agulhas Current and its palaeo-ecological implications. *South African Journal of Science*, **77**(12): 547–554.
342. Martin, A.K. (1981). The influence of the Agulhas Current on the physiographic development of the northernmost Natal Valley (S.W. Indian Ocean). *Marine Geology*, **39**: 259–276.
343. Gründlingh, M.L. (1991). Draaikolke suid van die Mosambiëkanaal. *Suid-Afrikaanse Tydskrif vir Natuurwetenskap en Tegnologie*, **10**(3): 137–141.
344. Gründlingh, M.L. (1984). An eddy over the northern Mozambique Ridge. *South African Journal of Science*, **80**(7): 324–329.
345. Magnier, Y. and B. Piton (1973). Les masses d’eau de l’Océan Indien à l’ouest et au nord de Madagascar au début de l’été austral (Novembre–Décembre). *Cahiers ORSTOM.*, **11**: 97–113.
346. Piola, A.R., H.A. Figueroa and A.A. Bianchi (1987). Some aspects of the surface circulation south of 20°S revealed by First GARP Global Experiment drifters. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **92**(C5): 5101–5114.
347. Feron, R.C.V., W.P.M. de Ruijter and P.J. van Leeuwen (1998). A new method to determine the mean sea surface dynamic topography from satellite altimeter observations. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **103**(C1): 1343–1362.
348. Levitus, S. (1982). Climatological atlas of the world ocean. *NOAA Professional Papers*, **13**: 1–173.
349. Gründlingh, M.L. and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (1979). Large scale flow patterns of the Agulhas Current system.

- South African Journal of Science*, **75**(6): 269–270.
350. Gründlingh, M.L. (1978). Drift of a satellite-tracked buoy in the southern Agulhas Current and Agulhas Return Current. *Deep-Sea Research*, **25**(12): 1209–1224.
351. Deacon, G.E.R. (1933). A general account of the hydrology of the South Atlantic Ocean. *Discovery Report*, **7**: 171–238.
352. Deacon, G.E.R. (1937). The hydrology of the Southern Ocean. *Discovery Report*, **15**: 124 pp.
353. Deacon, G.E.R. (1982). Physical and biological zonation in the Southern Ocean. *Deep-Sea Research*, **29**(1): 1–15.
354. Harris, T.F.W. and N.D. Bang (1974). Topographic Rossby waves in the Agulhas Current. *South African Journal of Science*, **70**(7): 212–214.
355. Gründlingh, M.L. (1988). Review of cyclonic eddies in the Mozambique Ridge Current. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **6**: 193–206.
356. Gründlingh, M.L. (1985). An intense cyclonic eddy east of the Mozambique Ridge. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **90**(C4): 7163–7167.
357. Gründlingh, M.L. (1987). Cyclogenesis in the Mozambique Ridge Current. *Deep-Sea Research*, **34**(1): 89–103.
358. Gründlingh, M.L. (1987). Anatomy of a cyclonic eddy of the Mozambique Ridge Current. *Deep-Sea Research*, **34**(2): 237–251.
359. Gründlingh, M.L. (1989). Two contra-rotating eddies of the Mozambique Ridge Current. *Deep-Sea Research*, **36**(1): 149–153.
360. Gründlingh, M.L. (1985). Features of the circulation in the Mozambique Basin in 1981. *Journal of Marine Research*, **43**(4): 779–792.
361. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and H.R. Valentine (1988). On mesoscale ocean eddies at the Agulhas Plateau. *South African Journal of Science*, **84**(3): 194–200.
362. Gründlingh, M.L. (1995) Tracking eddies in the southeast Atlantic and southwest Indian oceans with TOPEX/POSEIDON. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **100**(C12): 24 977–24 986.
363. Wyrтки, K., L. Magaard and J. Hagar (1976). Eddy energy in the oceans. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **81**(15): 2641–2646.
364. Schumann, E.H. (1982). Inshore circulation of the Agulhas Current off Natal. *Journal of Marine Research*, **40**(1): 43–55.
365. Pearce, A.F. (1977). Some features of the upper 500m of the Agulhas Current. *Journal of Marine Research*, **35**(4): 731–753.
366. Beal, L. and H. Bryden (1996). The water masses, velocity structure and volume transport of the Agulhas Current at 32°S. *International WOCE Newsletter*, **22**: 20, 23, 25–27.
367. Beal, L.M. and H.L. Bryden (1999). The velocity and vorticity structure of the Agulhas Current at 32° S. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **104**(C3): 5151–5176.
368. Beal, L.M. and H.L. Bryden (1997). Observations of an Agulhas Undercurrent. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **44**(9–10): 1715–1724.
369. Swallow, J.C. and L.V. Worthington (1961). An observation of a deep countercurrent in the Western North Atlantic. *Deep-Sea Research*, **8**(1): 1–19.
370. Volkmann, G. (1962). Deep current observations in the western North Atlantic. *Deep-Sea Research*, **9**(5): 493–500.
371. Worthington, L.V. and H. Kawai (1972). Comparison between deep sections across the Kuroshio and the Florida Current and Gulf Stream. In *Kuroshio: Its Physical Aspects*, editors H. Stommel and K. Yoshida, University of Tokyo Press, pp. 371–385.
372. Flemming, B.W. (1978). Underwater sand dunes along the southeast African continental margin – observations and implications. *Marine Geology*, **26**(1/2): 177–198.
373. Flemming, B.W. (1980). Sand transport and bedform patterns on the continental shelf between Durban and Port Elizabeth (Southeast African Continental Margin). *Sedimentary Geology*, **26**(1/3): 179–205.
374. Gründlingh, M.L. (1977). Drift observations from Nimbus VI satellite-tracked buoys in the southwestern Indian Ocean. *Deep-Sea Research*, **24**(10): 903–913.
375. Gründlingh, M.L. (1974). A description of inshore current reversals off Richards Bay based on airborne radiation thermometry. *Deep-Sea Research*, **21**(1): 47–55.
376. Gründlingh, M.L. and A.F. Pearce (1990). Frontal features of the Agulhas Current in the Natal Bight. *South African Geographical Journal*, **72**(1): 11–14.
377. Malan, O.G. and E.H. Schumann (1979). Natal shelf circulation revealed by Landsat imagery. *South African Journal of Science*, **75**(3): 136–137.
378. Lee, T.N. and D.A. Mayer (1977). Low-frequency variability and spin-off eddies along the shelf off Southeast Florida. *Journal of Marine Research*, **35**(1): 193–220.
379. Hiray, M. (1985). Satellite observation of characteristic features of frontal eddies in the vicinity of the Kuroshio front. *Bulletin of the Tohoku Regional Fisheries Research Laboratory*, **47**: 69–78.
380. Gründlingh, M.L. (1980). On the volume transport of the Agulhas Current. *Deep-Sea Research*, **27**(7): 557–563.
381. Pearce, A.F. (1978). Seasonal variations of temperature and salinity on the northern Natal continental shelf. *South African Geographical Journal*, **60**(2): 135–143.
382. Olson, D.B., R.A. Fine and A.L. Gordon (1992). Convective modifications of water masses in the Agulhas. *Deep-Sea Research*, **39** (Supplement 1): s163–s181.
383. Schumann, E.H. (1981). Low frequency fluctuations off the Natal coast. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **86** (C7): 6499–6508.
384. Schumann, E.H. and L.-A. Perrins (1982). Tidal and inertial currents around South Africa. In *Proceedings of the Eighteenth International Coastal Engineering Conference*, American Society of Civil Engineers, Cape Town, South Africa, Nov. 14–19, 1982, pp. 2562–2580.



385. Anderson, F.P. (1967). Time-variations in the Agulhas Current near Durban. National Physical Research Laboratory, Council for Scientific and Industrial Research, *internal publication IG 67/8*, 13 pp.
386. Hunter, I.(T.) (1981). On the land breeze circulation off the Natal coast. *South African Journal of Science*, **77**(8): 376–378.
387. Preston-Whyte, R.A. (1974). Land breezes and mountain–plain winds over the Natal coast. *South African Geographical Journal*, **56**(1): 27–35.
388. Flemming, B. and R. Hay (1988). Sediment distribution and dynamics of the Natal continental shelf. In *Coastal Ocean Studies off Natal, South Africa*, editor E.H. Schumann, Lecture Notes on Coastal and Estuarine Studies 26, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, pp. 47–80.
389. Gründlingh, M.L. (1983). Eddies in the southern Indian Ocean and Agulhas Current. In *Eddies in Marine Science*, editor A. R. Robinson, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, pp. 245–264.
390. Pearce, A.F. (1977). The shelf circulation off the east coast of South Africa. *Council for Scientific and Industrial Research, CSIR Research Report*, **361**, 220 pp.
391. Carter, R. and J. d’Aubrey (1988). Inorganic nutrients in Natal continental shelf waters. In *Coastal Ocean Studies off Natal, South Africa*, editor E. H. Schumann, Lecture Notes on Coastal and Estuarine Studies 26, Springer-verlag, Berlin, pp. 131–151.
392. Carter, R.A. and M.H. Schleyer (1988). Plankton distributions in Natal coastal waters. In *Coastal Ocean Studies off Natal, South Africa*, editor E. H. Schumann, Lecture Notes on Coastal and Estuarine Studies 26, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, pp. 152–177.
393. Hseuh, Y. and J.J. O’Brien (1971). Steady coastal upwelling induced by an along-shore current. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **1**(3): 180–186.
394. Schumann, E.H. (1986). The bottom boundary layer inshore of the Agulhas Current off Natal in August 1975. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **4**: 93–102.
395. Van der Elst, R.P. (1988). Shelf ichthyofauna off Natal. In *Coastal Ocean Studies off Natal, South Africa*, editor E. H. Schumann, Lecture Notes of Coastal and Estuarine Studies, 26, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, pp. 209–225.
396. Eagle, G.A. and M.J. Orren (1985). A seasonal investigation of the nutrients and dissolved oxygen in the water column along two lines of stations south and west of South Africa. *National Research Institute for Oceanology, CSIR. Research Report*, **567**: 52 pp.
397. Schumann, E.H. (1987). The coastal ocean off the east coast of South Africa. *Transactions of the Royal Society of South Africa*, **46**(3): 215–229.
398. Gründlingh, M.L. and A.F. Pearce (1984). Large vortices in the northern Agulhas Current. *Deep-Sea Research*, **31**(9): 1149–1156.
399. Gründlingh, M.L. (1979). Observation of a large meander in the Agulhas Current. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **84**(C7): 3776–3778.
400. Gründlingh, M.L. (1986). Features of the northern Agulhas Current in spring, 1983. *South African Journal of Science*, **82**(1): 18–20.
401. Van Leeuwen, P.J., W.P.M. de Ruijter and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (2000). Natal Pulses and the formation of Agulhas rings. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **105**(C3): 6425–6436.
402. Römer, E. (1939). The counter current off the south and southeast African coast. *Hydrographic Review*, **61**: 88–91.
403. Mallory, J.K. (1961). Bathymetric and hydrographic aspects of marine studies off the Natal Coast. In *Marine Studies off the Natal Coast*, Natal Regional Research Committee, *CSIR Symposium*, **S2**, pp. 31–39.
404. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and A.D. Connell (1989). The Natal Pulse and inshore counter currents off the South African east coast. *South African Journal of Science*, **85**(8): 533–535.
405. Nof, D. (1986). The collision between the Gulf Stream and warm-core rings. *Deep-Sea Research*, **33**(3): 359–378.
406. Watts, D.R. and D.B. Olson (1978). Gulf Stream ring coalescence with the Gulf Stream off Cape Hatteras. *Science*, **202**(4371): 971–972.
407. Smith, D.C. and G.P. Davis (1989). A numerical study of eddy interaction with an ocean jet. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **19**(7): 975–986.
408. Rossouw, J. (1984). Review of existing wave data, wave climate and design waves for South African and South West African (Namibian) coastal waters. *National Research Institute for Oceanology, CSIR Report, T/SEA 8401*, 66 pp. + tables + figures.
409. Gerber, M. (1993). The interaction of deep-water gravity waves and an annular current: Linear theory. *Journal of Fluid Mechanics*, **248**: 153–172.
410. Gründlingh, M.(L.) and M. Rossouw (1995). Wave attenuation in the Agulhas Current. *South African Journal of Science*, **91**(7): 357–359.
411. Stavropoulos, C.C. and C.P. Duncan (1974). A satellite-tracked buoy in the Agulhas Current. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **79**(C18): 2744–2746.
412. Lutjeharms, J.R.E., S.J. Weeks, R.D. [sic] van Ballegooyen and F.A. Shillington (1992). Shedding of an eddy from the seaward front of the Agulhas Current. *South African Journal of Science*, **88**(8): 430–433.
413. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1996). The exchange of water between the South Indian and the South Atlantic. In *The South Atlantic: Present and Past Circulation*, editors G. Wefer, W.H. Berger, G. Siedler and D. Webb, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, pp. 125–162.
414. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1981). Spatial scales and intensities of circulation in the ocean areas adjacent to South Africa. *Deep-Sea Research*, **28**(11): 1289–1302.
415. Blanton, J.O., L.P. Atkinson, L.J. Pietrafesa and T.N. Lee (1981). The intrusion of Gulf Stream Water across the continental shelf due to topographically-induced

- upwelling. *Deep-Sea Research*, **28**(4): 393–405.
416. Blanton, J.O. (1971). Exchange of Gulf Stream Water with North Carolina Shelf Water in Onslow Bay during stratified conditions. *Deep-Sea Research*, **18**(2): 167–178.
417. Lee, T.N., L.P. Atkinson and R. Legeckis (1981). Observations of a Gulf Stream frontal eddy on the Georgia continental shelf, April 1977. *Deep-Sea Research*, **29**(4): 347–378.
418. Quartly, G.D. and M.A. Srokosz (1993). Seasonal variations in the region of the Agulhas retroflection: studies with Geosat and FRAM. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **23**(9): 2107–2124.
419. Bang, N.D. (1972). Logic intensive versus data intensive methods in oceanographic planning, analysis and prediction. In *Proceedings of 'Conference 72'*, South African Geophysical Society, Johannesburg.
420. Wells, N.C., V. Ivchenko and S.E. Best (2000). Instabilities in the Agulhas retroflection current system – A comparative model study. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **105**(C2): 3233–3241.
421. Goschen, W.S. and E.H. Schumann (1990). Agulhas Current variability and inshore structures off the Cape Province, South Africa. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **95**(1): 667–678.
422. Goschen, W.S. and E.H. Schumann (1994). An Agulhas Current intrusion into Algoa Bay during August 1988. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **14**: 47–57.
423. Martin, A.K. and B.W. Fleming (1988). Physiography, structure and geological evolution of the Natal continental shelf. In *Coastal Ocean Studies off Natal, South Africa*, editor E.H. Schumann, Lecture Notes on Coastal and Estuarine Studies 26, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, pp. 11–46.
424. Hutson, W.H. (1980). The Agulhas Current during the late Pleistocene: analysis of modern faunal analogs. *Science*, **207**(4426): 64–66.
425. Winter, A. and K. Martin (1990). Late quaternary history of the Agulhas Current. *Paleoceanography*, **5**(4): 479–486.
426. Vincent, E. and N.J. Shackleton (1980). Agulhas Current temperature distribution delineated by oxygen isotope analysis of foraminifer in surface sediments. *Cushman Foundation Special Publication*, **19**: 84–95.
427. Bé, A.W.H. and J.C. Duplessy (1976). Subtropical convergence fluctuations and quaternary climates in the middle latitudes of the Indian ocean. *Science*, **194** (4263): 419–422.
428. Prell, W.L., W.H. Hutson and D.F. Williams (1979). The subtropical convergence and Late Quaternary circulation in the southern Indian Ocean. *Marine Micropaleontology*, **4**: 225–234.
429. Schumann, E.H., G.J.B. Ross and W.S. Goschen (1988). Cold water events in Algoa Bay and along the Cape south coast, South Africa, in March/April 1987. *South African Journal of Science*, **84**(7): 579–584.
430. Swart, V.P. and J.L. Largier (1987). Thermal structure of Agulhas Bank water. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **5**: 243–253.
431. Goschen, W.S. and E.H. Schumann (1988). Ocean current and temperature structures in Algoa Bay and beyond in November 1986. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **7**: 101–116.
432. Olson, D.B., G.B. Brown and S.R. Emmerson (1983). Gulf Stream frontal statistics from Florida Straits to Cape Hatteras derived from satellite and historical data. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **88**(C8): 4569–4577.
433. Watts, D.R. and W.E. Johns (1982). Gulf Stream meanders: observations on propagation and growth. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **87**(C12): 9467–9475.
434. Vukovich, F.M. and M.W. Crissman (1980). Some aspects of Gulf Stream western boundary eddies from satellite and *in situ* data. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **10**(11): 1792–1813.
435. Chew, F. (1981). Shingles, spin-off eddies and an hypothesis. *Deep-Sea Research*, **28**(4): 379–391.
436. Churchill, J.H., P.C. Cornillon and G.W. Milkowski (1986). A cyclonic eddy and shelf-slope water exchange associated with Gulf Stream warm-core rings. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **91**(C8): 9615–9623.
437. Bang, N.D. and W.R.H. Andrews (1974). Direct current measurements of a shelf-edge frontal jet in the southern Benguela system. *Journal of Marine Research*, **32**(3): 405–417.
438. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1981). Satellite studies of the South Atlantic upwelling system. In *Oceanography from Space*, editor J.F.R. Gower, Plenum Press, New York, pp. 195–199.
439. Shannon, L.V., J.J. Agenbag, N.D. Walker and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (1990). A major perturbation in the Agulhas retroflection area in 1986. *Deep-Sea Research*, **37**(3): 493–512.
440. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and H.R. Valentine (1988). Evidence for persistent Agulhas rings southwest of Cape Town. *South African Journal of Science*, **84**(9): 781–783.
441. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and N.M. Walters (1985). Ocean colour and thermal fronts south of Africa. In *South African Ocean Colour and Upwelling Experiment*, editor L.V. Shannon, Sea Fisheries Research Institute, Cape Town, pp. 227–237.
442. McClean-Padman, J. and L. Padman (1991). Summer upwelling on the Sydney inner continental shelf. The relative roles of local wind forcing and mesoscale eddy encroachment. *Continental Shelf Research*, **11**(4): 321–345.
443. Tranter, D.J., D.J. Carpenter and G.S. Leech (1986). The coastal enrichment of the East Australian Current eddy field. *Deep-Sea Research*, **33**(11/12): 1703–1728.
444. Bang, N.D. (1970). Major eddies and frontal structures in the Agulhas Current retroflexion [sic] area in March, 1969. In *Symposium "Oceanography South Africa 1970"*, South African National Committee for Oceanography

- graphic Research, 16 pp.
445. Walker, N.D. (1986). Satellite observations of the Agulhas Current and episodic upwelling south of Africa. *Deep-Sea Research*, **33**(8): 1083–1106.
446. Beckley, L.E. and R.C. van Ballegooyen (1992). Oceanographic conditions during three ichthyoplankton surveys of the Agulhas Current in 1990/91. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **12**: 3–17.
447. Rouault, M., A.M. Lee-Thorp and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (1999). An atmospheric moisture and thermal front in the boundary layer above the Agulhas Current. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, submitted.
448. Rouault, M., A.M. Lee-Thorp and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (2000). The atmospheric boundary layer above the Agulhas Current during alongcurrent winds. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **30**(1): 40–50.
449. Rouault, M., A. Lee-Thorp, I. Ansoorge and J. Lutjeharms (1995). Agulhas Current Air–Sea Interaction Experiment. *South African Journal of Science*, **91**(10): 493–496.
450. Beckley, L.E. (1988). Spatial and temporal variability in sea temperature in Algoa Bay, South Africa. *South African Journal of Science*, **84**(1): 67–69.
451. Beckley, L.E. (1983). Sea-surface temperature variability around Cape Recife, South Africa. *South African Journal of Science*, **79**(11): 436–438.
452. Harris, T.F.W. and C.C. Stavropoulos (1967). Some experience with a radiation thermometer over the Agulhas Current. *South African Journal of Science*, **63**(4): 132–136.
453. Schumann, E.H., L.-A. Perrins and I.T. Hunter (1982). Upwelling along the south coast of the Cape Province, South Africa. *South African Journal of Science*, **78**(6): 238–242.
454. Goschen, W.S. and E.H. Schumann (1995). Upwelling and the occurrence of cold water around Cape Recife, Algoa Bay, South Africa. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **16**: 57–67.
455. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1987). Die Subtropiese Konvergensie en Agulhasretrofleksievaart (SCARC). *South African Journal of Science*, **83**(8): 454–456.
456. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and I.J. Marais (1986). Real-time use of satellite remote sensing and telemetry on oceanologic research cruises. *South African Journal of Photogrammetry, Remote Sensing and Cartography*, **14**(6): 313–319.
457. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1978). Shipping disasters: a role for satellite oceanology. *South African Journal of Science*, **74**(10): 385–387.
458. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1987). Meridional heat transport across the Sub-Tropical Convergence by a warm eddy. *Nature*, **331**(6153): 251–253.
459. Shannon, L.V. (1979). The Cape Nimbus-7 CZCS programme: An overview and preliminary results. *South African Journal of Science*, **75**(12): 564.
460. Shannon, L.V., S.A. Mostert, N.M. Walters and F.P. Anderson (1983). Chlorophyll concentrations in the southern Benguela Current region as determined by satellite (Nimbus-7 Coastal Zone Colour Scanner). *Journal of Plankton Research*, **5**(4): 565–583.
461. Shannon, L.V., P. Schlittenhardt and S.A. Mostert (1984). The NIMBUS 7 CZCS experiment in the Benguela Current region off southern Africa, February 1980. 2. Interpretation of imagery and oceanographic implications. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **89**(D4): 4968–4976.
462. Weeks, S.J. and F.A. Shillington (1996). Phytoplankton pigment distribution and frontal structure in the sub-tropical convergence region south of Africa. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **43**(5): 739–768.
463. Shannon, L.V. (editor) (1985). *South African Ocean Colour and Upwelling Experiment*. Sea Fisheries Research Institute, Cape Town, 270 pp.
464. Gordon, A.L. and W.F. Haxby (1990). Agulhas eddies invade the South Atlantic – evidence from GEOSAT altimeter and shipboard conductivity–temperature–depth survey. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **95**(C3): 3117–3125.
465. Schouten, M.W., W.P.M. de Ruijter, P.J. van Leeuwen and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (2000). Translation, decay and splitting of Agulhas rings in the south-eastern Atlantic Ocean. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **105**(C9): 21,913–21,925.
466. Dingle, R.V., G.V. Birch, J.M. Bremner, R.H. de Decker, A. du Plessis, J.A. Engelbrecht, M.J. Fincham, T. Fitton, B.W. Flemming, R.I. Gentle, S.H. Goodlad, A.K. Martin, E.G. Mills, G.J. Moir, R.J. Parker, S.H. Robson, J. Rogers, D.A. Salmon, W.G. Sieser, E.S. W. Simpson, C.P. Summerhayes, F. Westall, A. Winter and M.W. Woodborne (1987). Deep-sea sedimentary environments around southern Africa (South-East Atlantic and South-West Indian Oceans). *Annals of the South African Museum*, **98**(1): 1–27.
467. Boyd, A.J. and F.A. Shillington (1994). Physical forcing and circulation patterns on the Agulhas Bank. *South African Journal of Science*, **90**(3): 114–122.
468. Probyn, T.A., B.A. Mitchell-Innes, P.C. Brown, L. Hutchings and R.A. Carter (1994). A review of primary productivity and related processes on the Agulhas Bank. *South African Journal of Science*, **90**(3): 166–173.
469. Ou, H.W. and W.P.M. de Ruijter (1986). Separation of an inertial boundary current from a curved coastline. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **16**(2): 280–289.
470. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and J.M. Meeuwis (1987). The extent and variability of the South East Atlantic upwelling. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **5**: 51–62.
471. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and P.L. Stockton (1991). Aspects of the upwelling regime between Cape Point and Cape Agulhas. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **10**: 91–102.
472. Lutjeharms, J.R.E., J. Olivier and E. Lourens (1991). Surface fronts of False Bay and vicinity. *Transactions of the Royal Society of South Africa*, **47**(415): 433–445.

473. Boyd, A.J., B.B.S. Tromp and D.A. Horstman (1985). The hydrology of the South African south-western coast between Cape Point and Danger Point in 1975. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **3**: 145–168.
474. Chapman, P. and J.L. Largier (1989). On the origin of Agulhas Bank bottom water. *South African Journal of Science*, **85**(8): 515–519.
475. Largier, J.L., P. Chapman, W.T. Peterson and V.P. Swart (1992). The western Agulhas Bank: circulation, stratification and ecology. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **12**: 319–339.
476. Schumann, E.H. (1992). Interannual wind variability on the south and east coasts of South Africa. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **97**(D18): 20 397–20 403.
477. Schumann, E.H., A.L. Cohen and M.R. Jury (1995). Coastal sea surface temperature variability along the south coast of South Africa and the relationship to regional and global climate. *Journal of Marine Research*, **53**(2): 231–248.
478. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1998). Coastal hydrography. In *A Field Guide to the Eastern and Southern Cape Coast*, editors R. Lubke and I. de Moor, The Wildlife and Environment Society of Southern Africa, Grahamstown, University of Cape Town Press, Rondebosch, pp. 50–61.
479. Lutjeharms, J.R.E., N.D. Bang and H.R. Valentine (1981). Die fisiese oseanologie van die Agulhasbank. 1. Vaart 170 van die N.S. *Thomas B. Davie*. South African Council for Scientific and Industrial Research *CSIR Research Report*, **386**, 38 pp.
480. Largier, J.L. and V.P. Swart (1987). East–west variation in thermocline breakdown on the Agulhas Bank. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **5**: 263–272.
481. Schumann, E.H. and L.J. Beekman (1984). Ocean temperature structures on the Agulhas Bank. *Transactions of the Royal Society of South Africa*, **34**(2): 191–203.
482. Shannon, L.V. and P. Chapman (1983). Suggested mechanisms for the chronic pollution by oil of beaches east of Cape Agulhas, South Africa. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **1**: 231–244.
483. Lutjeharms, J.R.E., D. Baird and I.T. Hunter (1986). Seeoppervlak dryfgedrag aan die Suid-Afrikaanse suidkus in 1979. *South African Journal of Science*, **82**(6): 324–326.
484. Orren, M.J. (1963). Hydrological observations in the South West Indian Ocean. *Investigational Reports of the Division of Sea Fisheries (of South Africa)*, **45**: 61 pp.
485. Blanton, J.O. and L.J. Pietrafesa (1978). Flushing of the continental shelf south of Cape Hateras by the Gulf Stream. *Geophysical Research Letters*, **5**(6): 495–498.
486. Boyd, A.J., J. Taunton-Clark and G.P.J. Oberholster (1992). Spatial features of the near-surface and mid-water circulation patterns off western and southern South Africa and their role in the life histories of various commercially fished species. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **12**: 189–206.
487. Preston-Whyte, R.A. and P.D. Tyson (1988). *The Atmosphere and Weather of Southern Africa*. Oxford University Press, Cape Town, 374 pp.
488. Hunter, I.T. (1987). The weather of the Agulhas Bank and Cape south coast. (South African) Council for Scientific and Industrial Research. *CSIR Research Report*, **634**, 184 pp.
489. Jury, M.R. (1994). A review of the meteorology of the eastern Agulhas Bank. *South African Journal of Science*, **90**(3): 109–113.
490. Schumann, E.H. (1983). Long period coastal trapped waves off the southeast coast of Southern Africa. *Continental Shelf Research*, **2**(2/3): 97–107.
491. Schumann, E.H. and K.H. Brink (1990). Coastal-trapped waves off the coast of South Africa: generation, propagation and current structures. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **20**(8): 1206–1218.
492. De Cuevas, B.A., G.B. Brundrit and A.M. Shipley (1986). Low-frequency sea-level fluctuations along the coasts of Namibia and South Africa. *Geophysical Journal of the Royal Astronomical Society*, **87**(1): 1–15.
493. Shillington, F.A. (1984). Long period edge waves off southern Africa. *Continental Shelf Research*, **3**(4): 343–357.
494. Jury, M.R. and S. Courtney (1991). A transition in weather over the Agulhas Current. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **19**: 159–171.
495. Wai, M.M. and S.A. Stage (1989). Dynamical analyses of marine atmospheric boundary layer structure near the Gulf Stream oceanic front. *Quarterly Journal of the Royal Meteorological Society*, **115**(485): 29–44.
496. Rouault, M. and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (2000). Air–sea exchange over an Agulhas eddy at the Subtropical Convergence. *The Global Atmosphere and Ocean System*, **7**(2): 125–150.
497. Jury, M.R. (1995). A review of research on ocean–atmosphere interactions and South African climate variability. *South African Journal of Science*, **91**(6): 289–294.
498. Wedepohl, P.M., J.R.E. Lutjeharms and J.M. Meeuwis (2000). The surface drift in the South East Atlantic Ocean. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **22**: 71–79.
499. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and D.J. Baker (1980). A statistical analysis of the meso-scale dynamics of the Southern Ocean. *Deep-Sea Research*, **27**(2): 145–159.
500. Schmitz, W.J. and J.R. Luyten (1991). Spectral time scales for mid-latitude eddies. *Journal of Marine Research*, **49**(1): 75–107.
501. Colton, M.T. and R.R.P. Chase (1983). Interaction of the Antarctic Circumpolar Current with bottom topography: an investigation using satellite altimetry. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **88**(C3): 1825–1843.
502. Zlotnicki, V., L.L. Fu and W. Patzert (1989). Seasonal variability in global sea level observed with Geosat altimetry. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **94**(C): 17 959–17 969.



503. Garraffo, Z., S.L. Garzoli, W. Haxby and D. Olson (1992). Analysis of a general circulation model. 2. Distribution of kinetic energy in the South Atlantic and Kuroshio/Oyashio systems. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **97**(C12): 20 139–20 153.
504. Mühry, A. (1864). Die Meeresströmungen an der Südspitze Afrikas. *Petermanns Geographische Mitteilungen*, **10**: 34–35.
505. Van Gogh, J. (1857). *Uitkomsten van Wetenskap en Ervaring aangaande winden en zeestromingen in sommige gedeelten van den oseaan*. Koninklijk Nederlandsch Meteorologisch Instituut, Bosch en Zoon, 74 pp.
506. Darbyshire, J. (1972). The effect of bottom topography on the Agulhas Current. *Reviews of Pure and Applied Geophysics*, **101**(9): 208–220.
507. Johns, W.E., T.N. Lee, F.A. Schott, R.J. Zantrop and R.H. Evans (1990). The North Brazil Current retroflection: seasonal structure and eddy variability. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **95**(C12): 22,103–22,120.
508. Luyten, J.(R.), A. Spencer, S. Tarbell, K. Luetkemeyer, P. Flament, J. Toole, M. Francis and S. Bennett (1990). Moored current meter, AVHRR, CTD, and drifter data from the Agulhas Current and Retroflexion [sic] region (1985–1987), Vol. XLII. Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution, Technical Report, WHOI-90-30, 100 pp.
509. Schmitz, W.J. (1996). On the eddy field in the Agulhas Retroflection, with some global considerations *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **101**(C7): 16 259–16 271.
510. Schmitz, W.J. and W.R. Holland (1986). Observed and modeled mesoscale variability near the Gulf Stream and Kuroshio Extension. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **91**(C8): 9624–9638.
511. Duncan, C.P. (1968). An eddy in the Subtropical Convergence southwest of South Africa. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **73**(2): 531–534.
512. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1988). Examples of extreme circulation events of the Agulhas Retroflection. *South African Journal of Science*, **84**(7): 584–586.
513. Luyten, J.R. and P.F. Smith (1985). Agulhas Current trajectory from new Argos drifter compared with simultaneous shipboard measurements. In *Oceans '85 Ocean Engineering and the Environment*, San Diego, 12–24 November 1985, 2, pp. 1165–1167.
514. Fuglister, F.C. and A.D. Voorhis (1965). A new method of tracking the Gulf Stream. *Limnology and Oceanography*, **10** suppl.: R115–R124.
515. Fuglister, F.C. and L.V. Worthington (1951). Some results of a multiple ship survey of the Gulf Stream. *Tellus*, **3**(1): 1–14.
516. De Ruijter, W.P.M., A. Biastoch, S.S. Drijfhout, J.R.E. Lutjeharms, R.P. Matano, T. Pichevin, P.J. van Leeuwen and W. Weijer (1999). Indian–Atlantic inter-ocean exchange: dynamics, estimation and impact. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **104**(C9): 20 885–20 911.
517. Goni [sic], G.J., S.L. Garzoli, A.J. Roubicek, D.B. Olson and O.T. Brown (1997). Agulhas ring dynamics from TOPEX/POSEIDON satellite altimeter data. *Journal of Marine Research*, **55**(5): 861–883.
518. Chassignet, E.P. and D.B. Boudra (1987). Dynamics of Agulhas retroflection and ring formation in a quasi-isopycnic coordinate numerical model. In *Three Dimensional Models of Marine and Estuarine Dynamics*, editors J.C.J. Nihoul and B.M. Jamart, Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp. 169–194.
519. Garzoli, S.L., A.L. Gordon, V. Kamenkovich, D. Pillsbury and C. Duncombe-Rae [sic] (1996). Variability and sources of the southeastern Atlantic circulation. *Journal of Marine Research*, **54**(6): 1039–1071.
520. Duncombe Rae, C.M., S.L. Garzoli and A.L. Gordon (1996). The eddy field of the southeast Atlantic Ocean: a statistical census from the Benguela Sources and Transports Project. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **101**(C5): 11 949–11 964.
521. Gründlingh, M.L. (1977). A Nimbus VII satellite-tracked buoy moored on the Mozambique Ridge. *South African Journal of Science*, **73**(12): 384–385.
522. Harris, T.F.W. and C.C. Stavropoulos (1978). Satellite tracked drifters between Africa and Antarctica. *Bulletin of the American Meteorological Society*, **59**(1): 51–59.
523. Garrett, J. (1981). The performance of the FGGE drifting buoy system. *Advances in Space Research*, **1**(4): 87–94.
524. Garrett, J. (1981). Oceanographic features revealed by the FGGE drifting buoy array. In *Oceanography from Space*, editor J.F.R. Gower, Plenum Press, New York, pp. 61–69.
525. Taljaard, J.J. (1977). South Africa's contribution to the FGGE drifting buoy programme for the southern hemisphere. *News Letter, South African Weather Bureau*, **339**: 198–207.
526. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and H.R. Valentine (1981). Ocean circulation studies in the vicinity of southern Africa: preliminary results using FGGE drifters and remote sensing. *Advances in Space Research*, **1**(4): 211–223.
527. Taljaard, J.J., J. van Heerden, R.D. Sewell and W. Jordaan (1983). South African drifting buoy programmes. *South African Weather Bureau, Technical Paper*, **12**: 1–57.
528. Shannon, L.V., J.R.E. Lutjeharms and J.J. Agenbag (1989). Episodic input of Subantarctic water into the Benguela region. *South African Journal of Science*, **85**(5): 317–332.
529. Boudra, D.B., K.A. Maillet and E.P. Chassignet (1989). Numerical modeling of Agulhas retroflection and ring formation with isopycnal outcropping. In *Meso-scale/Synoptic Coherent Structures in Geophysical Turbulence*, editors J.C.J. Nihoul and B.M. Jamart, Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp. 315–335.
530. Shannon, L.V., J.R.E. Lutjeharms and G. Nelson (1990). Causative mechanisms for intra-annual and inter-annual variability in the marine environment around Southern Africa. *South African Journal of Science*, **86**(7/8/9/10): 356–373.

531. Chapman, P., C.M. Duncombe Rae and B.R. Allanson (1987). Nutrients, chlorophyll and oxygen relationships in the surface layers at the Agulhas retroflection. *Deep-Sea Research*, **34**(8): 1399–1416.
532. Fine, R.A., M.J. Warner and R.F. Weiss (1988). Water mass modification of the Agulhas retroflection: chloro-fluoromethane studies. *Deep-Sea Research*, **35**(3): 311–332.
533. Bennett, S.L. (1988). *Where Three Oceans Meet: the Agulhas retroflection region*. Doctoral dissertation, Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution and Massachusetts Institute of Technology, WHOI-88-51, 367 pp.
534. Veronis, G. (1973). Model of world ocean circulation. I. Wind-driven, two layer. *Journal of Marine Research*, **31** (3): 228–288 (see also p. 289).
535. Garzoli, S.L., A.L. Gordon and D. Pillsbury (1994). Initial results in from BEST cruises. *WOCE Notes*, **6**(10): 10–11, 15.
536. Garzoli, S.L. and A.L. Gordon (1996). Origin and variability of the Benguela Current. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **101**(C11): 22 591–22 601.
537. Clement, A.C. and A.L. Gordon (1995). The absolute velocity field of Agulhas eddies and the Benguela Current. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **100**(C11): 22 591–22 601.
538. Flierl, G.R. (1981). Particle motions in large-amplitude wave field. *Geophysical and Astrophysical Fluid Dynamics*, **18**(1): 311–332.
539. McCartney, M.S. and M.E. Woodgate-Jones (1991). A deep-reaching anticyclonic eddy in the subtropical gyre of the eastern South Atlantic. *Deep-Sea Research*, **38** (supplement 1): s411–s443.
540. Smythe-Wright, D., A.L. Gordon, P. Chapman and M.S. Jones (1996). CFC-113 shows Brazil eddy crossing the South Atlantic to the Agulhas retroflection region. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **101**(C1): 885–895.
541. McDonagh, E.L. and K.J. Heywood (1999). The origin of an anomalous ring in the Southeast Atlantic. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **29**(8): 2025–2064.
542. McDonagh, E.L., K.J. Heywood and M.P. Meredith (1999). On the structure, paths and fluxes associated with Agulhas rings. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **104**(C9): 21,007–21,020.
543. Duncombe Rae, C.M., L.V. Shannon and F.A. Shillington (1989). An Agulhas ring in the South Atlantic Ocean. *South African Journal of Science*, **85**(11): 747–748.
544. Arhan, M., H. Mercier and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (1999). The disparate evolution of three Agulhas rings in the South Atlantic Ocean. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **104** (C9): 20 987–21 005.
545. Wang, L. and C.J. Koblinsky (1996). Low-frequency variability in the region of the Agulhas Retroflection. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **101**(C2): 3597–3614.
546. Kamenkovich, V.M., Y.P. Leonov, D.A. Nechaev, D.A. Byrne and A.L. Gordon (1996). On the influence of bottom topography on the Agulhas eddy. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **26**(6): 892–192.
547. Garzoli, S.L., G.J. Goni, A.J. Mariano and D.B. Olson (1997). Monitoring the upper southeastern Atlantic transports using altimeter data. *Journal of Marine Research*, **55**(3): 453–481.
548. Evenson, G. and P.J. van Leeuwen (1996). Assimilation of Geosat altimeter data for the Agulhas Current using the ensemble Kalman filter with a quasigeostrophic model. *Monthly Weather Review*, **124**(1):85–96.
549. Lutjeharms, J.R.E., H.R. Valentine and R.C. van Ballegooyen (1993). The Subtropical Convergence in the South Atlantic Ocean. *South African Journal of Science*, **89**(11/12): 552–559.
550. Beismann, J.-O., R.H. Käse and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (1999). Numerical experiments on the influence of submarine ridges on translation and stability of Agulhas rings. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **104**(C4): 7897–7906.
551. Shannon, L.V. (1985). The Benguela Ecosystem. 1. Evolution of the Benguela, physical features and processes. *Oceanography and Marine Biology, An Annual Review*, **23**: 105–182.
552. Shannon, L.V. and G. Nelson (1996). The Benguela: large scale features and processes and system variability. In *The South Atlantic: Present and Past Circulation*, editors G. Wefer, W. H. Berger, G. Siedler and D. Webb, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, pp. 163–210.
553. Shillington, F.A. (1998). The Benguela upwelling system off southwestern Africa. In *The Sea*, Volume 11, Chapter 20, editors A. R. Robinson and K. H. Brink, John Wiley & Sons, pp. 583–604.
554. Meeuwis, J.M. and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (1990). Surface thermal characteristics of the Angola-Benguela front. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **9**: 261–279.
555. Stockton, P.L. and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (1988). Observations of vortex dipoles on the Benguela upwelling front. *South African Geographer*, **15**(1/2): 27–35.
556. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and P.L. Stockton (1987). Kinematics of the upwelling front off Southern Africa. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **5**: 35–49.
557. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and C.P. Matthysen (1995). A recurrent eddy in the upwelling front off Cape Town. *South African Journal of Science*, **91**(7): 355–357.
558. Lutjeharms, J.R.E., F.A. Shillington and C.M. Duncombe Rae (1991). Observations of extreme upwelling filaments in the South East Atlantic Ocean. *Science*, **253**(5021): 774–776.
559. Duncombe Rae, C.M., F.A. Shillington, J.J. Agenbag, J. Taunton-Clark and M.L. Gründlingh (1992). An Agulhas Ring in the South East Atlantic Ocean and its interaction with the Benguela upwelling frontal system. *Deep-Sea Research*, **39**(11/12): 2009–2027.
560. Duncombe Rae, C.M., A.J. Boyd and R.J.M. Crawford (1992). “Predation” of anchovy by an Agulhas ring: a possible contributory cause of the very poor year class of 1989. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **12**:

- 167–173.
561. Shillington, F.A., W.T. Peterson, L. Hutchings, T.A. Probyn, H.N. Waldron and J.J. Agenbag (1990). A cool upwelling filament off Namibia, southwest Africa: preliminary measurements of physical and biological features. *Deep-Sea Research*, **37**(11): 1753–1772.
562. Lutjeharms, J.R.E., D.J. Webb, B.A. de Cuevas and S.R. Thompson (1996). Large-scale modelling of the South-East Atlantic upwelling system. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **16**: 205–225.
563. Gordon, A.L., K.T. Bosley and F. Aikman (1995). Tropical Atlantic water within the Benguela upwelling system at 27°S. *Deep-Sea Research*, **24**(1): 1–12.
564. Schell, I.I. (1968). On the relation between the winds off southwest Africa and the Benguela Current and the Agulhas Current penetration in the South Atlantic. *Deutsche Hydrographische Zeitschrift*, **21**(3): 109–117.
565. Rintoul, S.R. (1991). South Atlantic interbasin exchange. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **96**(C2): 2675–2692.
566. Döös, K. (1995). Inter-ocean exchange of water masses. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **100**(C7): 13 499–13 514.
567. Fu, L.-L. (1981). The general circulation and meridional heat transport of the subtropical South Atlantic determined by inverse methods. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **11**( ): 1171–1193.
568. MacDonald, A.M. (1993). Property fluxes at 30° S and their implications for the Pacific–Indian throughflow and the global heat budget. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **98**(C4): 6851–6868.
569. Schlitzer, R. (1993). Determining the mean, large-scale circulation of the Atlantic with the Adjoint Method. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **23**(9): 1935–1952.
570. Schlitzer, R. (1996). Mass and heat transports in the South Atlantic derived from historical hydrographic data. In *The South Atlantic: Present and Past Circulations*, editors G. Wefer, W.H. Berger, G. Siedler and D.J. Webb, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, pp. 305–323.
571. Holfort, J., G. Siedler and K. Speer (1998). The oceanic transport of heat and nutrients in the South Atlantic. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, submitted.
572. Taunton-Clark, J. and L.V. Shannon (1988). Annual and interannual variability in the South-East Atlantic during the 20th century. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **6**: 97–196.
573. Matano, R.P. and G.H. Philander (1993). Heat and mass balances of the South Atlantic Ocean calculated from a numerical model. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **98**(C ): 977–984.
574. Thompson, S.R., D.P. Stevens and K. Döös (1997). The importance of inter-ocean exchange south of Africa in a numerical model. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **102**(C2): 3303–3315.
575. Suga, T. and L.D. Talley (1995). Antarctic Intermediate Water circulation in the tropical and subtropical South Atlantic. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **100**(C7): 13 441–13 453.
576. De Ruijter, W.P.M. and D.B. Boudra (1985). The wind-driven circulation in the South Atlantic–Indian Ocean – I. Numerical experiments in a one-layer model. *Deep-Sea Research*, **32**(5): 557–574.
577. Chassignet, E.P., D.B. Olson and D.B. Boudra (1989). Evolution of rings in numerical models and observations. In *Mesoscale/Synoptic Coherent Structures in Geophysical Turbulence*, editors J.C.J. Nihoul and B.M. Jamart, Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp. 337–356.
578. Van Leeuwen, P.J. (1999). The time-mean circulation in the Agulhas region determined with the ensemble smoother. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **104**(C1): 1393–1404.
579. Florenchie, P. and J. Veron (1998). South Atlantic Ocean circulation: Simulation experiments with a quasi-geostrophic model and assimilation of TOPEX/POSEIDON and ERS 1 altimeter data. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **103**(C11): 24 737–24 758.
580. De Ruijter, W. (1982). Asymptotic analysis of the Agulhas and Brazil Current systems. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **12**(4): 361–373.
581. Boudra, D.B. and W.P.M. de Ruijter (1986). The wind-driven circulation in the South Atlantic–Indian Ocean – II. Experiments using a multi-layer numerical model. *Deep-Sea Research*, **33**(4): 447–482.
582. Boudra, D.B. and E.P. Chassignet (1988). Dynamics of Agulhas retroflexion and ring formation in a numerical model. I. The vorticity balance. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **18**(2): 280–303.
583. Pichevin, T., D. Nof and J. Lutjeharms (1999). Why are there Agulhas rings? *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **29**(4): 693–707.
584. Van Leeuwen, P.J. (2001) An ensemble smoother with error estimates. *Monthly Weather Review*, **129**(4): 709–728.
585. Stevens, D.P. and S.R. Thompson (1994). The South Atlantic in the Fine-Resolution Antarctic Model. *Annales Geophysicae*, **12**: 826–839.
586. Pearce, A.F. (1983). Adrift in the Agulhas Return Current. *Deep-Sea Research*, **30**(3): 343–347.
587. Minster, J.-F. and M.C. Gennero (1995). High-frequency variability of western boundary currents using ERS 1 three-day repeat altimeter data. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **100**(C11): 22603–22612.
588. Lutjeharms, J.R.E., B.R. Allanson and L. Parker (1986). Frontal zones, chlorophyll and primary production patterns in the surface waters of the Southern Ocean south of Africa. In *Marine Interfaces Ecohydrodynamics*, editor J.C.J. Nihoul, Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp. 105–117.
589. Allanson, B.R., R.C. Hart and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (1981). Observations on the nutrients, chlorophyll and primary production of the Southern Ocean south of Africa. *South African Journal of Antarctic Research*, **10**/11: 3–14.
590. Boden, B.P., C.M. Duncombe Rae and J.R.E.

- Lutjeharms (1988). The distribution of the diatoms of the S. W. Indian Ocean waters between Cape Town and the Prince Edward Island archipelago. *South African Journal of Science*, **84**(10): 811–818.
591. Abrams, R.W. and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (1986). Relationship between seabirds and meso-scale hydrographic features in the Agulhas Current retroflexion region. In *Acta XIX Congressus Internationalis Ornithologici* Vol. I, Ottawa, Canada, pp. 991–996.
592. Cockcroft, V.G., V.M. Peddemors, P.G. Ryan and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (1990). Cetacean sightings in the Agulhas Retroflexion, Agulhas Rings and Subtropical Convergence. *South African Journal of Antarctic Research*, **20**(2): 64–67.
593. Hofmann, E.E. (1985). The large-scale horizontal structure of the Antarctic Circumpolar Current from FGGE drifters. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **90**(C7): 7087–7097.
594. Belkin, E.M. and A.L. Gordon (1996). Southern Ocean fronts from the Greenwich meridian to Tasmania. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **101**(C2): 3675–3696.
595. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1985). Location of frontal systems between Africa and Antarctica: some preliminary results. *Deep-Sea Research*, **32**(12): 1499–1509.
596. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and J.M. Meeuwis (1999). The location of the surface expression of oceanic fronts in the South Atlantic and South Indian Oceans. In preparation.
597. Holliday, N.P. and J.F. Read (1998). Surface oceanic fronts between Africa and Antarctica. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **45**(2–3): 217–238.
598. Park, Y.-H., L. Gambéroni and E. Charriaud (1993). Frontal structure, water masses, and circulation in the Crozet Basin. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **98**(C7): 12 361–12 385.
599. Park, Y.-H., L. Gambéroni and E. Charriaud (1991). Frontal structure and transport of the Antarctic Circumpolar Current in the South Indian Ocean sector, 40–80°D. *Marine Chemistry*, **35**(1): 45–62.
600. Whitworth, T. and W.D. Nowlin (1987). Water masses and currents of the Southern Ocean at the Greenwich meridian. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **92**(C6): 6462–6476.
601. Smythe-Wright, D., P. Chapman, C. Duncombe Rae, L.V. Shannon and S.M. Boswell (1998). Characteristics of the South Atlantic subtropical frontal zone between 15°W and 5°E. *Deep-Sea Research*, **45**(1): 167–192.
602. Barange, M., E.A. Pakhomov, R. Perissinotto, P.W. Froneman, H.M. Verheye, J. Taunton-Clark and M.I. Lucas (1998). Pelagic community structure of the subtropical convergence region south of Africa and in the mid-Atlantic Ocean. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **45**(10): 1663–1687.
603. Bryantsev, V.A., S.V. Pavlukhin and A.S. Pelevin (1979). Characteristics of geostrophic currents and the Subtropical Convergence zone in the Southwestern Indian Ocean. *Oceanology*, **19**(4): 395–399.
604. Walker N.D. and J.A. Lindesay (1989). Preliminary observations of oceanic influences on the February–March 1988 floods in central South Africa. *South African Journal of Science*, **85**(3): 164–169. 367.
605. Walker, N.D. and F.A. Shillington (1990). The effect of oceanographic variability on South African weather and climate. *South African Journal of Science*, **86**(7/8/9/10): 382–386.
606. Mason, S.J. (1995). Sea-surface temperature – South African rainfall associations, 1910–1989. *International Journal of Climatology*, **15**(2): 119–135.
607. Mason, S.J. (1990). Temporal variability of sea surface temperatures around Southern Africa: a possible forcing mechanism for the 18-year rainfall oscillation. *South African Journal of Science*, **86**(5/6): 243–252.
608. Mason, S.J. and P.D. Tyson (1992). The modulation of sea surface temperature and rainfall associations over southern Africa with solar activity and the quasi-biennial oscillation. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **97**(D5): 5847–5856.
609. Tyson, P.D., T.G.J. Dyer and M.N. Manetse (1975). Secular changes in South African rainfall: 1880 to 1972. *Quarterly Journal of the Royal Meteorological Society*, **101**(430): 817–833.
610. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and L.H. McQuaid (1986). Changes in the structure of thermal ocean fronts south of Africa over a three-month period. *South African Journal of Science*, **82**(9): 470–476.
611. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1990). Temperatuurstruktuur van die oseaanbolaag tussen Kaapstad en Marion-eiland. *South African Journal of Antarctic Research*, **20**(1): 21–32.
612. Camden-Smith, F., L.-A. Perrins, R.V. Dingle and G.B. Brundrit (1981). A preliminary report on long-term bottom-current measurements and sediment transport/erosion in the Agulhas Passage, Southwest Indian Ocean. *Marine Geology*, **39**: M81–M88.
613. Maury, M.F. (edited J. Leighly, 1963). *The physical geography of the sea; and its meteorology*. The Belknap Press of Harvard University Press, Cambridge, MA, 432 pp., 10 plates.
614. Anonymous (1954). *1854 Koninklijk Nederlands Meteorologisch Instituut 1954*. Staatsdrukkerij en Uitgeversbedrijf, 's Gravenhage, 469 pp.
615. Koninklijk Nederlandsch Meteorologisch Instituut (1856). *Maury's passatkaart van den Atlantischen Oceaen, vermeerderd met Hollandsche gegevens door den lt. t. z. K.F.R. Andrau*. Koninklijk Nederlandsch Meteorologisch Instituut.
616. Berghaus, H. (1867). Welt-karte zur Übersicht der Meeres-Stömungen und das Schnellverkers. In (1988) *Handatlas über alle Theile der Erde und über das Weltgebäude*, editor A. Stieler, Gotha, 95 charts.
617. Rouault, M., C.J.C. Reason, J.R.E. Lutjeharms and A. Belaars (2003). Underestimation of latent and sensible heat fluxes above the Agulhas Current in NCEP and



- ECMWF analyses. *Journal of Climate*, **16**(2): 776–782.
618. Reason, C.J.C. (2001). Evidence for the influence of the Agulhas Current on regional atmospheric circulation patterns. *Journal of Climate*, **14**(6): 2769–2778.
619. Rouault, M., S.A. White, C.J.C. Reason and J.R.E. Lutjeharms and I. Jobard (2002). Ocean–atmosphere interaction in the Agulhas Current and a South African extreme weather event. *Weather and Forecasting*, **17**(4): 655–669.
620. Josey, S.A., E.C. Kent and P.K. Taylor (1999). New insights into the ocean heat budget closure problem from analysis of the SOC air–sea flux climatology. *Journal of Climate*, **12**( ): 2856–2880.
621. Xue, H., J.M. Bane and L.M. Goodman (1995). Modification of the Gulf Stream through strong air–sea interaction in winter: Observations and numerical simulations. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **25**( ): 533–557.
622. Kondo, J. (1976). Heat balance of the East China Sea during the Air Mass Transformation Experiment. *Journal of the Meteorological Society of Japan*, **54**( ): 382–398.
623. Bosart, L.F. and S.C. Lin (1984). A diagnostic analysis of the Presidents’ Day Storm of February 1979. *Monthly Weather Review*, **112**( ): 2148–2177.
624. Holt, T. and S. Raman (1990). Marine boundary layer structure and circulation in the region of offshore redevelopment of a cyclone during GALE. *Monthly Weather Review*, **118**( ): 392–410.
625. Rouault, M., I. Jobard, S.A. White and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (2001). Studying rainfall events over South Africa and adjacent oceans using the TRMM satellite. *South African Journal of Science*, **97**(11/12): 455–460.
626. Morrow, R., F. Birol, D. Griffen and J. Sudre 2004. Divergent pathways of cyclonic and anti-cyclonic eddies. *Geophysical Research Letters*, **31**(24): L24311.
627. Richardson, P.L., J.R.E. Lutjeharms and O. Boebel (2003). Introduction to the “Inter-ocean exchange around southern Africa”. *Deep-Sea Research II*, **50**(1): 1–12.
628. Boebel, O., J. Lutjeharms, C. Schmid, W. Zenk, T. Rossby and C. Barron (2003). The Cape Cauldron: a regime of turbulent inter-ocean exchange. *Deep-Sea Research II*, **50**(1): 57–86.
629. Lutjeharms, J.R.E., O. Boebel and T. Rossby (2003). Agulhas cyclones. *Deep-Sea Research II*, **50**(1): 13–34.
630. Penven, P., J.R.E. Lutjeharms, P. Marchesiello, S.J. Weeks and C. Roy (2001). Generation of cyclonic eddies by the Agulhas Current in the lee of the Agulhas Bank. *Geophysical Research Letters*, **28**(6): 1055–1058.
631. Lutjeharms, J.R.E., P. Penven, C. Roy (2003). Modelling the shear-edge eddies of the southern Agulhas Current. *Continental Shelf Research*, **23**(11–13): 1099–1115.
632. Lutjeharms, J.R.E., O. Boebel, P.C.F. van der Vaart, W.P.M. de Ruijter, T.H. Rossby and H.L. Bryden (2001). Evidence that the Natal Pulse controls the Agulhas Current over its full depth. *Geophysical Research Letters*, **28**(18): 3449–3452.
633. Penven, P., C. Roy, G.B. Brundrit, A. Colin de Verdière, P. Fréon, A.S. Johnson, J.R.E. Lutjeharms and F.A. Shillington (2001). A regional hydrodynamic model of the Southern Benguela. *South African Journal of Science*, **97** (11/12): 472–475.
634. Ravenstein, E.G. (1900). The voyages of Diogo Cão and Bartholomeu Dias, 1482–1488. *Geographical Journal*, **712**( ): 625–655.
635. Axelson, E. (1973). *Congo to Cape, Early Portuguese Explorers*. Harper and Row, New York, 224 pp.
636. Thibault-Botha, D., J.R.E. Lutjeharms and M.J. Gibbons (2004). Siphonophore assemblages along the east coast of South Africa; mesoscale distribution and seasonal variations. *Journal of Plankton Research*, **26**(9): 1–14.
637. Liltved, W.R., E. Harley and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (2000). A new subspecies of *Cypraeaovula* occurring off the northern part of the Eastern Cape, South Africa, with notes on possible genetic and oceanographic influences on its distribution. Supplement to *Cowries and Their Relatives of Southern Africa*, Seacomber Publications, Cape Town, pp. 225–232.
638. Gibbons, M.J. and D. Thibault-Botha (2002). The match between ocean circulation and zoogeography of epipelagic siphonophores around southern Africa. *Journal of the Marine Biological Association of the United Kingdom*, **82**(15): 801–810.
639. Gibbons, M.J., M. Barange and L. Hutchings (1995). Zoogeography and diversity of euphausiids around southern Africa. *Marine Biology*, **123**( ): 257–268.
640. Underhill, L.G., R.J.M. Crawford and C.J. Camphuysen (2002). Leach’s storm petrels *Oceanodroma leucorhoa* off southern Africa: breeding and migratory status, and measurements and mass of the breeding population. *Transactions of the Royal Society of South Africa*, **57**(1&2): 43–46.
641. Nel, D.C., J.R.E. Lutjeharms, E.A. Pakhomov, I.J. Anson, P.G. Ryan and N.T.W. Klages (2001). Exploitation of mesoscale oceanographic features by grey-headed albatross *Thalassarche chrystomota* in the southern Indian Ocean. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, **217**(6): 15–26.
642. Weimerskirch, H., M. le Corre, S. Jaquemet, M. Potier and F. Marsac (2004). Foraging strategy of a top predator in tropical waters: great frigatebirds in the Mozambique Channel. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, **275**( ): 297–308.
643. Kostianoy, A.G., A.I. Ginzburg, S.A. Lebedev, M. Frankignoulle and B. Delille (2003). Fronts and mesoscale variability in the southern Indian Ocean as inferred from the TOPEX/POSEIDON and ERS-2 altimetry data. *Marine Physics*, **43**(5): 671–682.
644. Kostianoy, A.G., A.I. Ginzburg, M. Frankignoulle and B. Delille (2004). Fronts in the southern Indian Ocean

- as inferred from satellite sea surface temperature data. *Journal of Marine Systems*, **45**(1): 55–73.
645. Anonymous (1983). Cruise report R/V “Dr. Fridtjof Nansen”, Fisheries Resources Survey, Madagascar, 16–28 June 1983. *Reports on Surveys with the R/V Dr Fridtjof Nansen*, Institute of Marine Research, Bergen, 9 pp.
646. DiMarco, S.F., P. Chapman and W.D. Nowlin (2000). Satellite observations of upwelling on the continental shelf south of Madagascar. *Geophysical Research Letters*, **27**(24): 3965–3968.
647. Machu, E., J.R.E. Lutjeharms, A.M. Webb and H.M. van Aken (2003). First hydrographic evidence of the southeast Madagascar upwelling cell. *Geophysical Research Letters*, **29**(21), 2009, doi: 10.1029/2002GL015381.
648. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (2005). The ocean environment off south-eastern Africa. *South African Journal of Science*, submitted.
649. Quartly, G.D. and M.A. Srokosz (2004). Eddies in the southern Mozambique Channel. *Deep-Sea Research II*, **51**(1): 69–83.
650. Lutjeharms, J.R.E., W.P.M. de Ruijter, H. Ridderinkhof, H. van Aken, C. Veth, P.J. van Leeuwen, S.S. Drijfhout, J.H.F. Jansen and G.-J.A. Brummer (2000). MARE and ACSEX: new research programmes on the Agulhas Current system. *South African Journal of Science*, **96**(3): 105–110.
651. Ho, C.-R., Q. Zheng and N.-J. Kuo (2004). SeaWiFS observations of upwelling south of Madagascar: long-term variability and interaction with East Madagascar Current. *Deep-Sea Research II*, **51**(1): 59–67.
652. De Ruijter, W.P.M., H.M. van Aken, E.J. Beier, J.R.E. Lutjeharms, R.P. Matano and M.W. Schouten (2003). Eddies and dipoles around South Madagascar : formation, pathways and large-scale impact. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **51**(3): 383–400.
653. Schouten, M.W., W.P.M. de Ruijter and P.J. van Leeuwen (2002). Upstream control of Agulhas ring shedding. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **107**(C8): 10.1029/2001JC000804.
654. Kizner, Z. (1997). Solitary Rossby waves with baroclinic modes. *Journal of Marine Research*, **55**(4): 671–685.
655. Kizner, Z., D. Berson and R. Khvoles (2002). Baroclinic modon equilibria: stability and transitions. *Journal of Fluid Mechanics*, **486**: 239–270.
656. Lutjeharms, J.R.E., S. Jamaloodien and I.J. Anson (2002). The temporal displacement of ocean fronts south-east of Africa. *South African Journal of Science*, **98**(5/6): 304–306.
657. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and C.S. Fillis (2003). Intrusion of sub-Antarctic water across the Subtropical Convergence south of Africa. *South African Journal of Science*, **99**(3/4): 173–176.
658. Ridderinkhof, H., J.R.E. Lutjeharms and W.P.M. de Ruijter (2001). A research cruise to investigate the Mozambique Current. *South African Journal of Science*, **97**(11/12): 461–464.
659. Hughes, G.R., P. Luschi, R. Mencacci and F. Papi (1998). The 7000-km oceanic journey of a leatherback turtle tracked by satellite. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology*, **229**(2): 209–217.
660. Luschi, P., A. Sale, R. Mencacci, G.R. Hughes, J.R.E. Lutjeharms and F. Papi (2003). Current transport of leatherback sea turtles (*Dermochelys coriacea*) in the ocean. *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London (Supplement)*, **270**: S129–S132: doi: 10.1098/rsbl.203.0036.
661. Uenzelmann-Neben, G. (2002). Contourites on the Agulhas Plateau, SW Indian Ocean: indications for the evolution of currents since Palaeogene times. In *Deep-Water Contourite Systems: Modern Drifts and Ancient Series, Seismic and Sedimentary Characteristics*, editors D.A.V. Stow, C.J. Pudsey, J.A. Howe, J.-C. Faugères and A.R. Viana, The Geological Society of London, *Memoirs*, **22**: 271–288.
662. Tucholke, B., and R.E. Embley (1984). Cenozoic regional erosion of the abyssal sea floor off South Africa. In *Interregional unconformities and hydrocarbon accumulation*, editor J. S. Schlee, AAPG, Tulsa, *Memoir*, **36**: 145–164.
663. Cortese, G., A. Abelmann and R. Gersonde (2004). A glacial warm water anomaly in the subantarctic Atlantic Ocean, near the Agulhas Retroflexion. *Earth and Planetary Science Letters*, **222**(3–4): 767–778.
664. Knorr, G. and G. Lohmann (2003). Southern Ocean origin for the resumption of Atlantic thermohaline circulation during deglaciation. *Nature*, **424**(6948): 532–536.
665. Flores, J.-A., R. Gersonde and F.J. Sierro (1999). Pleistocene fluctuations in the Agulhas Current Retroflexion based on the calcareous plankton record. *Marine Micropaleontology*, **37**(1): 1–22.
666. Rau, A.J., J. Rogers, J.R.E. Lutjeharms, J. Giraudeau, J.A. Lee-Thorp, M.-T. Chen and C. Waelbroeck (2002). A 450-kyr record of hydrographical conditions on the western Agulhas Bank slope, south of Africa. *Marine Geology*, **180**(1–4): 183–201.
667. Peeters, F.J.C., R. Acheson, G.-J.A. Brummer, W.P.M. de Ruijter, G.M. Ganssen, R.R. Schneider, E. Ufkes and D. Kroon (2004). Vigorous exchange between Indian and Atlantic Ocean at the end of the last five glacial periods. *Nature*, **430**(7000): 661–665.
668. Weijer, W., W.P.M. de Ruijter and H.A. Dijkstra (2001). Stability of the Atlantic overturning circulation: competition between Bering Strait freshwater flux and Agulhas heat and salt sources. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **31**(8): 2385–2402.
669. Weijer, W., W.P.M. de Ruijter, A. Sterl and S.S. Drijfhout (2002). Response of the Atlantic overturning circulation to South Atlantic sources of buoyancy. *Global and Planetary Change*, **34**(3–4): 293–311.
670. Quartly, G.D. and M.A. Srokosz (2002). SST observa-

- tions of the Agulhas and East Madagascar retroflexions by the TRMM Microwave imager. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **32**(5): 1585–1592.
671. Rouault, M. and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (2003). Estimation of sea-surface temperature around southern Africa from satellite-derived microwave observations. *South African Journal of Science*, **99**(9/10): 489–494.
672. Lutjeharms, J.R.E., M. Rouault, W.P.M. de Ruijter and H.M. van Aken (2005). Temporary cessation of inter-ocean exchange south of Africa. *Geophysical Research Letters*, in preparation.
673. Quartly, G.D. and M.A. Srokosz (2002). Satellite observations of the Agulhas Current system. *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London A*, **361**(1802): 51–56.
674. Longhurst, A. (2001). A major seasonal plankton bloom in the Madagascar Basin. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **48**(11): 2413–2422.
675. Srokosz, M.A., G.D. Quartly and J.J.H. Buck (2004). A possible plankton wave in the Indian Ocean. *Geophysical Research Letters*, **31**, L13301, doi: 10.1029/2004GLO19738.
676. Kara, A.B., P.A. Rochford, and H.E. Hurlburt (2003). Mixed layer depth variability over the global ocean. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **108**(C3): 3079, doi: 10.1029/2000JC000736.
677. Boebel, O., S. Anderson-Fontana, C. Schmid, I. Ansoerge, P. Lazarevich, J. Lutjeharms, M. Prater, T. Rossby, and W. Zenk (2000). KAPEX RAFOS Float Data Report 1997–1999. Part A: The Agulhas- and South Atlantic Current Components. *GSO Technical Report 2000–2; UCT Oceanography Report 2000–1; Berichte aus dem Institut für Meereskunde an der Christian-Albrechts-Universität – Kiel*, IFM 318, 194 pp.
678. Fqgterer, D. and cruise participants (1998). The expedition ANTARKTIS–XIV/4 of RV “Polarstern” in 1997: Physical Oceanography. Alfred-Wegener Institut für Polar- und Meeresforschung, Bremerhaven, *Berichte zur Polarforschung*, **259**.
679. Quartly, G.D., J.J.H. Buck, M.A. Srokosz and A.C. Coward (2004). Eddies around Madagascar – An end to the retroflexion? *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, submitted.
680. De Cuevas, B.A., D.J. Webb, A.C. Coward, C. S. Richmond and E. Bourke (1999). The UK Ocean Circulation and Advanced Modelling Project (OCCAM). In *High Performance Computing*, Proceeding of HPCI Conference 1998, Manchester, 12–14 January 1998, editors R.J. Allan, M.F. Guest, A.D. Simpson, D.S. Henty and D.A. Nicole, Plenum Press, pp. 325–335.
681. Machu, E. and V. Garçon (2001). Phytoplankton seasonal distribution from SeaWiFS data in the Agulhas Current system. *Journal of Marine Research*, **59**(5): 795–812.
682. Machu, E., A. Biastoch, A. Oschlies, M. Kawamiya, J.R.E. Lutjeharms and V. Garçon (2005). Phytoplankton distribution in the Agulhas system from a coupled physical–biological model. *Deep-Sea Research I*, in press.
683. Machu, E., B. Ferret and V. Garçon (1999). Phytoplankton pigment distribution from SeaWiFS data in the subtropical convergence zone south of Africa: a wavelet analysis. *Geophysical Research Letters*, **26**(10): 1469–1472.
684. Lentini, C.A.D., D.B. Olson and G.P. Podesta (2002). Statistics of Brazil Current rings observed from AVHRR: 1993 to 1998. *Geophysical Research Letters*, **29**(16): doi: 10.1029/2002GL015221.
685. Jochum, M., and P. Malanotte-Rizzoli (2003). On the generation of North Brazil Current rings. *Journal of Marine Research*, **61**(2): 147–173.
686. Goni, G.J. and W.E. Johns (2003). Synoptic study of warm rings in the North Brazil Current retroflexion region using satellite altimetry. In *Interhemispheric Water Exchange in the Atlantic Ocean*, editors G. J. Goni and P. Malanotte-Rizzoli, Elsevier, pp. 335–356.
687. Garzoli, S.L., A. Ffield, W.E. Johns and Q. Yao (2004). North Brazil Current retroflexion and transports. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **109**(C01013): doi: 10.1029/2003JC001775.
688. Garzoli, S.L., A. Ffield and Q. Yao (2003). North Brazil Current rings and the variability in the latitude of retroflexion. In *Interhemispheric Water Exchange in the Atlantic Ocean*, editors G. J. Goni and P. Malanotte-Rizzoli, Elsevier, pp. 357–373.
689. Llido, J., J. Sudre, I. Dadou and V. Garçon (2004). Variability of the biological front south of Africa from SeaWiFS and a coupled physical–biological model. *Journal of Marine Research*, **62**( ): 595–609.
690. Oschlies, A. and V. Garçon (1998). Eddy-enhancement of primary production in a model of the North Atlantic Ocean. *Nature*, **394**( ): 266–269.
691. Reason, C.J.C. (1998). Warm and cold events in the south-east Atlantic/southwest Indian Ocean region and potential impacts on circulation and rainfall over southern Africa. *Meteorology and Atmospheric Physics*, **69**(1–2): 49–65.
692. Reason, C.J.C. and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (2000). Modelling multidecadal variability in the South Indian Ocean region: local forcing or a near-global mode? *South African Journal of Science*, **96**(3): 127–135.
693. Reason, C.J.C. (2001). Subtropical Indian Ocean SST dipole events and southern African rainfall. *Geophysical Research Letters*, **28**(11): 2225–2227.
694. Lutjeharms, J.R.E., P.M.S. Monteiro, P.D. Tyson and D. Obura (2001). The oceans around southern Africa and regional effects of global change. *South African Journal of Science*, **97** (3/4): 119–130.
695. Majodina, M. and M.R. Jury (1996). Composite winter cyclones south of Africa: evolution during eastward transit over the Agulhas warm pool. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **17**:241–252.
696. Reason, C.J.C. (2000). Multidecadal climate variabil-

- ity in the subtropics/mid-latitudes of the Southern Hemisphere oceans. *Tellus*, **52A**(2): 203–223.
697. Reason, C.J.C. and H. Mulenga (1999). Relationship between South African rainfall and SST anomalies in the Southwest Indian Ocean. *International Journal of Climatology*, **19**(15): 1651–1673.
698. Reason, C.J.C. and C.R. Godfred-Spenning (1998). SST variability in the South Indian Ocean and associated circulation and rainfall patterns over southern Africa. *Meteorology and Atmospheric Physics*, **66**( ): 243–258.
699. Reason, C.J.C. (2002). The wet winter of 2001 over the southwestern Cape, South Africa: potential large-scale influences. *South African Journal of Science*, **98**(5/6): 307–310.
700. Rouault, M. and A.M. Lee-Thorp (1996). Fine-time resolution measurements of atmospheric boundary layer properties between Cape Town and Marion Island. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **17**: 281–296.
701. Jury, M., M. Rouault, S. Weeks and M. Schormann (1997). Atmospheric boundary-layer fluxes and structure across a land–sea transition zone in south-eastern Africa. *Boundary-Layer Meteorology*, **83**(2): 311–330.
702. Shannon, L.V. (2001). The Benguela Current. In *Encyclopedia of Ocean Science*, editors: J. Steele, S. Thorpe and K. Turekian, Academic Press, London, volume 1, pp. 255–267.
703. Howard, W.R. and W.L. Prell (1992). Late quaternary surface circulation of the southern Indian Ocean and its relationship to orbital variation. *Paleoceanography*, **7**(1): 79–117.
704. New, A.L., K. Stansfield, D. Smyth-Wright, D.A. Smeed, A.L. Evans and S.G. Alderson (2005). Physical and biochemical aspects of the flow across the Mascarene Plateau in the Indian Ocean. *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London*, **A363** (1826): 151–168.
705. Fieux, M. and J.C. Swallow (1988). Flow of deep water into the Somali Basin. *Deep-Sea Research*, **35**( ): 303–309.
706. Barton, E.D. and A.E. Hill (1989). Abyssal flow through the Amirante Trench (western Indian Ocean). *Deep-Sea Research*, **36**(7): 1121–1126.
707. Arhan, M., H. Mercier and Y.-H. Park (2003). On the deep water circulation of the eastern South Atlantic Ocean. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **50**(7): 889–916.
708. Donohue, K., and J. Toole (2003). A near-synoptic survey of the southwest Indian Ocean. *Deep-Sea Research II*, **50**(12–13): 1893–1931.
709. Beal, L.M., A. Ffield and A.L. Gordon (2000). Spreading of Red Sea overflow waters in the Indian Ocean. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **105**(C4): 8549–8564.
710. Reid, J.R. (2003). On the total geostrophic circulation of the Indian Ocean: flow patterns, tracers and transports. *Progress in Oceanography*, **56**(1): 137–186.
711. Reid, J.R. (1996). On the circulation of the South Atlantic Ocean. In *The South Atlantic: Present and Past Circulation*, editors: G. Wefer, W.H. Berger, G. Siedler and D. Webb, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, pp. 13–44.
712. Witter, D.L., and A.L. Gordon (1999). Interannual variability of South Atlantic circulation from 4 years of TOPEX/POSEIDON satellite altimeter observations. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **104**(C9): 20,927–20,948.
713. Wunsch, C. and D. Stammer (1995). The global frequency-wavenumber spectrum of oceanic variability estimated from TOPEX/POSEIDON altimetric measurements. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **100**(C12): 24,895–24,910.
714. Johnson, G.C., D.L. Musgrave, B.A. Warren, A. Ffield and D.B. Olson (1998). Flow of bottom and deep water in the Amirante Passage and Mascarene Basin. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **103**(C13): 30,973–30,984.
715. Drijfhout, S.S., E. Maier-Reimer and U. Mikolajewicz (1996). Tracing the conveyor belt in the Hamburg large-scale geostrophic ocean general circulation model. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **101**(C10): 22,563–22,575.
716. Van Aken, H.M., H. Ridderinkhof and W.P.M. de Ruijter (2004). North Atlantic Deep Water in the southwestern Indian Ocean. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **51**(6): 755–776.
717. Warren, B.A., T. Whitworth and J.H. LaCasce (2002). Forced resonant undulations in the deep Mascarene Basin. *Deep-Sea Research II*, **49**(7–8): 1513–1526.
718. Park, Y.-H., E. Charriaud and M. Fieux (1998). Thermohaline structure of the Antarctic Surface Water/Winter Water in the Indian sector of the Southern Ocean. *Journal of Marine Systems*, **17**(1–4): 5–23.
719. You, Y. (1997). Seasonal variations of thermocline circulation and ventilation in the Indian Ocean. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **102**(C5): 10,391–10,422.
720. You, Y. (1998). Intermediate water circulation and ventilation of the Indian Ocean derived from water-mass contributions. *Journal of Marine Research*, **56**(5): 1029–1067.
721. You, Y. (1999). Dianeutral mixing, transformation and transport of the deep water of the Indian Ocean. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **46**(1): 109–148.
722. You, Y. (2000). Implications of the deep circulation and ventilation of the Indian Ocean on the renewal mechanism of North Atlantic Deep Water. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **105**(C10): 23,895–23,926.
723. Matano, R.P., E.J. Beier, P.T. Strub and R. Tokmakian (2002). Large-scale forcing of the Agulhas variability: the seasonal cycle. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **32**(4): 1228–1241.
724. Fu, L.-L. and R.D. Smith (1996). Global ocean circulation from satellite altimetry and high-resolution computer simulation. *Bulletin of the American Meteorological Society*, **77**(11): 2625–2636.
725. Ganachaud, A., C. Wunsch, J. Marotzke and J. Toole



- (2000). Meridional overturning and large-scale circulation of the Indian Ocean. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **105**(C11): 26,117–26,134.
726. McCarthy, M.S. and L.D. Talley (1999). Three-dimensional isoneutral potential vorticity structure in the Indian Ocean. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **104**(C6): 13,251–13,267.
727. Robbins, P.E. and J.M. Toole (1997). The dissolved silica budget as a constraint on the meridional overturning circulation of the Indian Ocean. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **44**( ): 879–906.
728. De Ruijter, W.P.M., H. Ridderinkhof, J.R.E. Lutjeharms, M.W. Schouten and C. Veth (2002). Observations of the flow in the Mozambique Channel. *Geophysical Research Letters*, **29**(10): 1401–1403.
729. Warren, B.A., H. Stommel and J.C. Swallow (1966). Water masses and patterns of flow in the Somali Basin during the southwest monsoon of 1964. *Deep-Sea Research*, **13**( ): 825–860.
730. DiMarco, S.F., P. Chapman, W.D. Nowlin, P. Hacker, K.A. Donohue, M. Luther, G.C. Johnson and J.M. Toole (2002). Volume transport and property distributions of the Mozambique Channel. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **49**(7–8): 1481–1511.
731. Nauw, J.J., H.M. van Aken, J.R.E. Lutjeharms and W.P.M. de Ruijter (2006). Intra-thermocline eddies in the southern Indian Ocean. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, in press.
732. Chapman, P., S.F. DiMarco, R.E. Davis and A.C. Coward (2003). Flow at intermediate depths round Madagascar based on ALACE float trajectories. *Deep-Sea Research II*, **50**(12–13): 1957–1986.
733. Ridderinkhof, H. and W.P.M. de Ruijter (2003). Moored current observations in the Mozambique Channel. *Deep-Sea Research II*, **50**(12–13): 1933–1955.
734. Heywood, K.J. and Y.K. Somayajulu (1997). Eddy activity in the South Indian Ocean from ERS-1 altimetry. *Proceedings of the 3rd ERS Symposium on “Space at the Service of our Environment”*, Florence, March 1997, *ESA SP-414*, pp. 1479–1483.
735. Schouten, M.W., W.P.M. de Ruijter, P.J. van Leeuwen and H. Ridderinkhof (2003). Eddies and variability in the Mozambique Channel. *Deep-Sea Research II*, **50**(12–13): 1987–2003.
736. Schouten, M.W., W.P.M. de Ruijter, P.J. van Leeuwen and H. Dijkstra (2002). A teleconnection between the equatorial and southern Indian Ocean. *Geophysical Research Letters*, **29**(16), 1812, doi: 10.1029/2001GL014542.
737. Quadfasel, D.R. and J. C. Swallow (1986). Evidence for 50-day period planetary waves in the South Equatorial current of the Indian Ocean. *Deep-Sea Research*, **33**( ): 1307–1312.
738. Donohue, K.A., E. Firing and L. Beal (2000). Comparison of three velocity sections of the Agulhas Current and Agulhas Undercurrent. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **105**(C12): 28,585–28,593.
739. Waseda, T., H. Mitsudera, B. Taguchi and Y. Yoshikawa (2003). On the eddy-Kuroshio interaction: Meander formation process. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **108**(C7): 13-1 – 13-18, 3220, doi:10.1029/2002JC001583.
740. Bryden, H.L., L.M. Beal and L.M. Duncan (2005). Structure and transport of the Agulhas Current and its temporal variability. *Journal of Oceanography*, **61**(3): 479–492.
741. Dijkstra, H.A. and W.P.M. de Ruijter (2001). Barotropic instabilities of the Agulhas Current system and their relation to ring formation. *Journal of Marine Research*, **59**(4): 517–533.
742. Bryden, H.L. and L.M. Beal (2001). Role of the Agulhas Current in Indian Ocean circulation and associated heat and freshwater fluxes. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **48**(8): 1821–1845.
743. Webb, D.J. (1999). An analytical model of the Agulhas Current as a western boundary current with linearly varying viscosity. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **29**(7): 1517–1527.
744. Van der Vaart, P.C.F and W.P.M. de Ruijter (2001). Stability of western boundary currents with an application to pulslike behaviour of the Agulhas Current. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **31**(9): 2625–2644.
745. Demarcq, H., R.G. Barlow and F.A. Shillington (2003). Climatology and variability of sea surface temperature and surface chlorophyll in the Benguela and Agulhas ecosystems as observed by satellite imagery. *African Journal of Marine Science*, **25**: 363–372.
746. Blanke, B., C. Roy, P. Penven, S. Speich, J. McWilliams and G. Nelson (2002). Linking wind and interannual upwelling variability in a regional model of the southern Benguela. *Geophysical Research Letters*, **29**(24): article number 2188.
747. Boebel, O., and C. Barron (2003). A comparison of in-situ float velocities with altimeter derived geostrophic velocities. *Deep-Sea Research II*, **50**(1): 119–139.
748. Okkonen, S.R., T.J. Weingartner, S.L. Danielson and D.L. Musgrave (2003). Satellite and hydrographic observations of eddy-induced shelf-slope exchange in the northwestern Gulf of Alaska. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **108**(C2): 3033, doi:10.1029/2002JC001342.
749. Snaith, H.M. and I.S. Robinson (1996). A study of currents south of Africa using Geosat satellite altimetry. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **101**(C8): 18,141–18,154.
750. Boebel, O., T. Rossby, J. Lutjeharms, W. Zenk and C. Barron (2003). Path and variability of the Agulhas Return Current. *Deep-Sea Research II*, **50**(1): 35–56.
751. Read, J.F., M.I. Lucas, S.E. Holley and R.T. Pollard (2000). Phytoplankton, nutrients and hydrography in the frontal zone between the Southwest Indian Subtropical gyre and the Southern Ocean. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **47**(12): 2341–2368.
752. Fu, L.-L. (1996). The circulation and its variability of the South Atlantic Ocean: first results from the TOPEX/

- POSEIDON mission. In *The South Atlantic: Present and Past Circulation*, editors: G. Wefer, W.H. Berger, G. Siedler and D. Webb, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, pp. 63–82.
753. Holfort, J. and G. Siedler (2001). The meridional oceanic transports of heat and nutrients in the South Atlantic. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **31**(1): 5–29.
754. Garnier, E., J. Verron and B. Barnier (2003). Variability of the South Atlantic upper ocean circulation: a data assimilation experiment with 5 years of TOPEX/POSEIDON altimeter observations. *International Journal of Remote Sensing*, **24**(5): 911–934.
755. Feron, R.C.V. (1995). The Southern Ocean western boundary currents: comparison of Fine Resolution Antarctic Model results with GEOSAT altimeter data. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **100**(C10): 4959–4975.
756. Donners, J. and S. Drijfhout (2004). The Lagrangian view of South Atlantic interocean exchange in a global ocean model compared with inverse model results. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **34**(): 1019–1035.
757. Donners, J., S.S. Drijfhout and A.C. Coward (2004). Impact of cooling on the water mass exchange of Agulhas rings in a high-resolution ocean model. *Geophysical Research Letters*, **31**: L16312, doi: 10.1029/2004GL020644.
758. Marchesiello, P., B. Barnier and A.P. de Miranda (1998). A sigma-coordinate primitive equation model for studying the circulation in the South Atlantic. Part II: Meridional transport and seasonal variability. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **45**(4–5): 573–608.
759. Mercier, H., M. Arhan and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (2003). Upper-layer circulation in the eastern Equatorial and South Atlantic Oceans in January–March 1995. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **50**(7): 863–887.
760. Treguier, A.M., O. Boebel, B. Barnier and G. Madec (2003). Agulhas eddy fluxes in a  $1/6^\circ$  Atlantic model. *Deep-Sea Research II*, **50**(1): 251–280.
761. Treguier, A.M., B. Barnier, A.P. de Miranda, J.M. Molines, N. Grima, M. Imbard, G. Madec, C. Messenger, Y. Reynaud and S. Michel (2001). An eddy-permitting model of the Atlantic circulation: Evaluating open boundary conditions. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **106**(C10): 22,115–22,129.
762. Penduff, T., P. Brasseur, C.-E. Testut, B. Barnier and J. Verron (2002). A four-year eddy-permitting assimilation of sea-surface temperature and altimetric data in the South Atlantic Ocean. *Journal of Marine Research*, **60**(6): 805–833.
763. Penduff, T., B. Barnier, K. Beranger and T. Verron (2001). Comparison of near-surface mean and eddy flows from two numerical models of the South Atlantic Ocean. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **106**(C8): 16,857–16,867.
764. Barnier, B., P. Marchesiello, A. Pimenta de Miranda, J.-M. Molines and M. Coulibaly (1998). A sigma-coordinate primitive equation model for studying the circulation in the South Atlantic. Part I: Model configuration with error estimates. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **45**(4–5): 573–608.
765. Skogen, M.D. (1999). A biophysical model applied to the Benguela upwelling system. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **21**: 235–249.
766. Drijfhout, S.S., C.A. Katsman, L. de Steur, P.C.F. van der Vaart, P.J. van Leeuwen and C. Veth (2003). Modeling the initial, fast sea surface height decay of Agulhas ring “Astrid”. *Deep-Sea Research II*, **50**(1): 299–319.
767. Katsman, C.A., P.C.F. van der Vaart, H.A. Dijkstra and W.P.M. de Ruijter (2003). Stability of multilayer ocean vortices: a parameter study including realistic Gulf Stream and Agulhas Rings. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **33**(6): 1197–1218.
768. Drijfhout, S.S. (2003). Why anticyclones can split. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **33**(8): 1579–1591.
769. Herbert, S., Y. Morel and M. Arhan (2003). Erosion of a surface vortex by a seamount. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **33**(8): 1664–1679.
770. De Steur, L., P.J. van Leeuwen and S.S. Drijfhout (2004). Tracer leakage from modeled Agulhas rings. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **34**(6): 1387–1399.
771. Stern, M.E. (2000). Scattering of an eddy advected by a current towards a topographic obstacle. *Journal of Fluid Mechanics*, **402**: 211–223.
772. Strub, P.T., F.A. Shillington, C. James and S.J. Weeks (1998). Satellite comparison of the seasonal circulation in the Benguela and California Current systems. In *Benguela Dynamics*, editors S.C. Pillar, C.L. Moloney, A.I.L. Payne and F.A. Shillington, *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **19**: 99–112.
773. Ganachaud, A. and C. Wunsch (2003). Large-scale ocean heat and freshwater transports during the World Ocean Circulation Experiment. *Journal of Climate*, **16**(2): 696–705.
774. You, Y.Z. (2002). Quantitative estimate of Antarctic Intermediate Water contributions from the Drake Passage and the southwest Indian Ocean to the South Atlantic. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **107**(C4): 10.1029/2001JC000880.
775. You, Y., J.R.E. Lutjeharms, O. Boebel and W.P.M. de Ruijter (2003). Quantification of interocean exchange of intermediate water masses around southern Africa. *Deep-Sea Research II*, **50**(1): 197–228.
776. Matano, R.P. and E.J. Beier (2003). A kinematic analysis of the Indian/Atlantic interocean exchange. *Deep-Sea Research II*, **50**(1): 229–249.
777. Reason, C.J.C., J.R.E. Lutjeharms, J. Hermes, A. Biastoch and R.E. Roman (2003). Inter-ocean fluxes south of Africa in an eddy-permitting model. *Deep-Sea Research II*, **50**(1): 281–298.
778. Dijkstra, H.A. and W.P.M. de Ruijter (2001). On the physics of the Agulhas: steady retroflexion regimes. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **31**(10): 2971–2985.

779. Stramma, L. (2001). Current systems of the Atlantic Ocean. In *Encyclopedia of Ocean Science*, editors: J. Steele, S. Thorpe and K. Turekian, Academic Press, London, pp. 589–598.
780. Anonymous (1861). De Agulhas-stroom, afgeleid uit de temperatuur van het zeewater aan de oppervlakte en de invloed, dien hij op de atmosphere uitoefent. In *Onderzoekingen met den Zeethermometer, als uitkomsten van wetenschap en ervaring, aangaande de winden en zeestromingen in sommige gedeelten van den ocean*, Koninklijk Nederlandsch Meteorologisch Insituut te Utrecht, Kemink & Zoon, Utrecht, pp. 51–117.
781. Richardson, P.L. and S.L. Garzoli (2003). Characteristics of intermediate water flows in the Benguela Current as measured with RAFOS floats. *Deep-Sea Research II*, **50**(1): 87–118.
782. Garzoli, S.L. and J. Goni [sic] (2000). Combining altimeter observations and oceanographic data for ocean circulation and climate studies. In *Satellites, Oceanography and Society*, editor D. Halpern, Elsevier Oceanography Series 63, Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp. 79–97.
783. Garzoli, S.L., P.L. Richardson, C.M. Duncombe Rae, D.M. Fratantoni, G.J. Goñi and A.J. Roubicek (1999). Three Agulhas rings observed during the Benguela Current Experiment. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **104**(C9): 20,971–20,985.
784. Schmid, C., O. Boebel, W. Zenk, J.R.E. Lutjeharms, S. Garzoli, P.L. Richardson and C. Barron (2003). Early evolution of an Agulhas ring. *Deep-Sea Research II*, **50**(1): 141–166.
785. Van Aken, H., A.K. van Veldhoven, C. Veth, W.P.M. de Ruijter, P.J. van Leeuwen, S.S. Drijfhout, C.P. Whittle and M. Rouault (2003). Observations of a young Agulhas ring, Astrid, during MARE, the Mixing of Agulhas Rings Experiment, in March 2000. *Deep-Sea Research II*, **50**(1): 167–195.
786. Nof, D. (1990). The role of angular momentum in the splitting of isolated eddies. *Tellus*, **42A**(4): 469–481.
787. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1987). Die Subtropiese Konvergensie en Agulhasretrofleksievaart (SCARC). *South African Journal of Science*, **83**(8): 454–456.
788. Bryden, H.L. *et al.* (1995). Agulhas Current Experiment. RRS Discovery Cruise 214, 26 Feb–09 Mar 1995. Institute of Oceanographic Sciences, Deacon Laboratory, Wormley, *Cruise Report* **249**, 85 pp.
789. Angot, M. and M. Ménaché (1963). Premières données hydrologiques sur la région voisine de Nosy Bé (nord-ouest de Madagascar). *Cahiers O.R.S.T.O.M., série Océanographie*, **3**: 7–15.
790. Angot, M. and R. Gerard (1966). Caractères hydrologiques de l'eau de surface au Centre ORSTOM de Nosy-Bé de 1962 à 1965). *Cahiers O.R.S.T.O.M., série Océanographie*, **4**(3): 37–54.
791. Beckley, L.E. (1998). The Agulhas Current ecosystem with particular reference to dispersal of fish larvae. In *Large Marine Ecosystems of the Indian Ocean*, editors K. Sherman, E. N. Okemwa and M. J. Ntiba, Blackwell Science, Oxford, pp. 255–276.
792. Carter, R.A., H.F. McMurray and J.L. Largier (1987). Thermocline characteristics and phytoplankton dynamics in Agulhas Bank waters. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **5**: 327–336.
793. De Villiers, S. (1998). Seasonal and interannual variability in phytoplankton biomass on the southern African continental shelf: evidence from satellite-derived pigment concentrations. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **19**: 169–179.
794. Gerard, R. (1964). Étude de l'eau de mer de surface dans une baie de Nosy-Bé. *Cahiers O.R.S.T.O.M., série Océanographie*, **2**(2): 5–26.
795. Fowler, J.L. and A.J. Boyd (1998). Transport of anchovy and sardine eggs and larvae from the western Agulhas Bank to the west coast during the 1993/94 and 1994/95 spawning seasons. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **19**: 181–195.
796. Roy, C., S. Weeks, M. Rouault, G. Nelson, R. Barlow and C. van der Lingen (2001). Extreme oceanographic events recorded in the Southern Benguela during the 1999–2000 summer season. *South African Journal of Science*, **97**(11/12): 465–471.
797. Hutchings, L., 1994. The Agulhas Bank: a synthesis of available information and a brief comparison with other east-coast shelf regions. *South African Journal of Science*, **90**(3): 179–185.
798. Boyd, A.J., J. Tauton-Clark and G.P.J. Oberholster, 1992. Spatial features of the near-surface and midwater circulation patterns off western and southern South Africa and their role in the life histories of various commercially fished species. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **12**: 189–206.
799. Roel, B.A., J. Hewitson, S. Kerstan and I. Hampton (1994). The role of the Agulhas Bank in the life cycle of pelagic fish. *South African Journal of Science*, **90**(3): 185–196.
800. Olivar, M. P. and L. E. Beckley (1994). Influence of the Agulhas Current on the distribution of Laternfish larvae off the south-east coast of Africa. *Journal of Plankton Research*, **16**(12): 1759–1780.
801. Oliff, W.D. (1973). Chemistry and productivity at Richard's Bay. *NPRL Oceanography Division, Contract Report, CFIS 37B*, Durban, South Africa.
802. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (2001). The Agulhas Current. In *Encyclopedia of Ocean Science*, editors: J. Steele, S. Thorpe and K. Turekian, Academic Press, London, volume 1, pp. 104–113.
803. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (2006). The coastal oceans of south-eastern Africa. In *The Sea*, Volume 14, editors: A.R. Robinson, K. Brink, J. Hall, G. Ingram, D. Mackas and D. Townsend, pp. 781–832.
804. Verheye, H.M., L. Hutchings, J.A. Huggett, R.A. Carter, W.T. Peterson and S.J. Painting (1994). Community structure, distribution and tropic ecology of zooplankton on the Agulhas Bank with special reference to copepods. *South African Journal of Science*,

- 90(3): 154–165.
805. Hunter, I. T. (1988). Climate and weather off Natal. In *Coastal Ocean Studies off Natal, South Africa*, editor E. H. Schumann, Lecture Notes on Coastal and Estuarine Studies 26, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, pp. 81–100.
806. Tyson, P.D. (1986). *Climate Change and Variability in Southern Africa*. Oxford University Press, Cape Town, 220 pp.
807. Stramma, L. and M. England (1999). On the water masses and mean circulation of the South Atlantic Ocean. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **104**(C9): 20,863–20,883.
808. Li, X., W. Zheng, W.G. Pichel, C.-Z. Zou, P. Clemente-Colón and K.S. Friedman (2004). A cloud line over the Gulf Stream. *Geophysical Research Letters*, **31**( ): doi:10.1029/2004GL019892.
809. Nehring, D., E. Hagen, A. Jorge da Silva, R. Schemainda, G. Wolf, N. Michelsen, W. Kaiser, L. Postel, F. Gosselck, U. Brenning, E. Kuhner, G. Arlt, H. Siegel, L. Gohs and G. Bubnitz (1987). Results of oceanological studies in the Mozambique Channel in February–March 1980. *Beiträge zur Meereskunde*, **56**: 51–63.
810. Anonymous (1984). The oceanological conditions in the western part of the Mocambique [sic] Channel in February–March 1980. *Geodätische und geophysikalische Veröffentlichungen*, **IV**, 163 pp.811. Tripp, R.T. (~1967). *An Atlas of Coastal Surface Drifts; Cape Town to Durban*. South African Oceanographic Data Centre, Department of Oceanography, University of Cape Town, Rondebosch, South Africa, 12 pp.
812. Harris, T.F.W. (1978). Review of coastal currents in Southern African waters. *South African National Science Programmes Report, CSIR Report*, **30**, vii+103 pp.
813. Gordon, A.L. (2003). The browniest retroflexion. *Nature*, **421**: 904–905.
814. Gründlingh, M.L., J.R.E. Lutjeharms, G. Brundrit, J.J. Agenbag, A. Boyd, G. Nelson, A. Johnson, M. Roberts, L. Shannon and E. H. Schumann (1999). Physical oceanographic activities in South Africa: 1995–1998. *South African Journal of Science*, **95**(6/7): 281–288.
815. Schumann, E.H., W.K. Illenberger and W.S. Goschen (1991). Surface winds over Algoa Bay. *South African Journal of Science*, **87**(5): 202–207.
816. Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and H.R. Valentine (1983). Die fisiese oseanologie van die Agulhasbank. Deel II: Vaart 185 van die N. S. Thomas B. Davie. *CSIR Research Report*, **557**, 15 pp.
817. Landman, W.A. and S.J. Mason (1999). Change in the association between Indian Ocean sea-surface temperatures and summer rainfall over South Africa and Namibia. *International Journal of Climatology*, **19**(13): 1477–1492.
818. Mason, S. J., J.A. Lindsay and P.D. Tyson (1994). Simulating drought in southern Africa using sea-surface temperature-variations. *Water SA*, **20**(1): 15–22.
819. Park, Y.-H., E. Charriaud, P. Craneguy and A. Kartavtseff (2001). Fronts, transport, and Weddell Gyre at 30°E between Africa and Antarctica. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **106**(C2): 2857–2879.
820. Martin, J., P. Guibout, M. Crepon and J.-C. Lizaray (1965). Circulation superficielle dans l’océan Indien. Résultats de mesures faites à électrodes remorquées G.E.K. entre 1955–1963. *Cahiers Oceanographie*, **17**, suppl. 3, 221–241.
821. Donguy, J.-R. and B. Piton (1991). The Mozambique Channel revisited. *Oceanologica Acta*, **14**(6): 549–558.
822. Jorge da Silva, A. (1984). Hydrology and fish distribution at the Sofala Bank (Mozambique). *Revista de Investigação Pesqueira*, **12**, Instituto de Investigação Pesqueira, Moçambique, pp. 5–36.
823. Sætre, R. and R. de Paula e Silva (1979). The marine fish resources of Mozambique. *Reports on surveys with the R/V Dr Fridtjof Nansen*, Serviço de Investigações Pesqueiras, Maputo, Institute of Marine Research, Bergen, 179 pp.
824. Brinca, L., A. Jorge da Silva, L. Sousa, I.M. Sousa and R. Sætre (1983). A survey of the fish resources at Sofala Bank, Mozambique. *Reports on Surveys with the R/V Dr Fridtjof Nansen*, Serviço de Investigações Pesqueiras, Maputo, Institute of Marine Research, Bergen, 70+c15 pp.
825. Gould, W.J. (2005). From Swallow floats to Argo – the development of neutrally buoyant floats. *Deep-Sea Research II*, **52**(3–4): 529–543.
826. Moore, J.K., M.R. Abbot and J.G. Richman (1999). Location and dynamics of the Antarctic Circumpolar Front from satellite sea surface temperature data. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **104**(C): 3059–3073.



# Bibliography

---

This Bibliography is not merely an alphabetical representation of the References section. Instead, its purpose is to present a comprehensive list of all significant publications on aspects of the greater Agulhas Current system to date. This includes publications on the biology, chemistry, geology, palaeoceanography and meteorology of the region where it is deemed that such publications make an important contribution to a better understanding of the system. It also includes cruise, data and contract reports which contain valuable information that can not be found elsewhere. Articles of a historical interest are incorporated, but papers on more wide-ranging matters, such as global circulation patterns, that make no explicit reference to the Agulhas Current system, are usually not. Selection has thus consistently been based on the contribution made to a better understanding of specifically the Agulhas Current system.

- Abrams, R.W. and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (1986). Relationship between seabirds and meso-scale hydrographic features in the Agulhas Current retroflexion region. In *Acta XIX Congressus Internationalis Ornithologici* Vol. I, Ottawa, Canada, pp. 991–996.
- Allanson, B.R., R.C. Hart and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (1981). Observations on the nutrients, chlorophyll and primary production of the Southern Ocean south of Africa. *South African Journal of Antarctic Research*, **10/11**: 3–14.
- Anderson, F.P. (1967). Time-variations in the Agulhas Current near Durban. National Physical Research Laboratory, Council for Scientific and Industrial Research, *internal publication IG 67/8*, 13 pp.
- Anderson, F.P. (1972). Circulation patterns along the east coast (coastal zone and open ocean) in relation to pollution. *South African Journal of Science*, **68**(5): 121–123.
- Anderson, F.P., M.L. Gründlingh and C.C. Stavropoulos (1988). Kinematics of the southern Natal coastal circulation: some historic measurements 1962–63. *South African Journal of Science*, **84**(10): 857–860.
- Andrau, K.F.R. (1859). De stormen op het Kaapse rif. In *Maandelikse Zeilaanwijzingen van Java naar het Kanaal*, Koninklijk Nederlandsch Meteorologisch Instituut, Utrecht, pp. 25–56.
- Angot, M. and M. Ménaché (1963). Premières données hydrologiques sur la région voisine de Nosy Bé (nord-ouest de Madagascar). *Cahiers O.R.S.T.O.M., série Océanographie*, **3**: 7–15.
- Angot, M. and R. Gerard (1966). Caractères hydrologiques de l'eau de surface au Centre ORSTOM de Nosy-Bé de 1962 à 1965. *Cahiers O.R.S.T.O.M., série Océanographie*, **4**(3): 37–54.
- Anonymous (1965). Development of the International Indian Ocean Expedition. *International Indian Ocean Expedition, Collected Reprints*, **I**: ix–xi.
- Anonymous (1970). Agulhas. In *Standard Encyclopaedia of Southern Africa*, editors D.J. Potgieter and P.C. du Plessis, Vol.1, Nasou, Cape Town, p. 254.
- Anonymous (1983). Cruise report R/V “Dr. Fridtjof Nansen”, Fisheries Resources Survey, Madagascar, 16–28 June 1983. *Reports on Surveys with the R/V Dr Fridtjof Nansen*, Institute of Marine Research, Bergen, 9 pp.
- Anonymous (1984). The oceanological conditions in the western part of the Mocambique [sic] Channel in February–March 1980. *Geodätische und geophysikalische Veröffentlichungen*, **IV**, 163 pp.
- Arhan, M., H. Mercier and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (1999). The disparate evolution of three Agulhas rings in the South Atlantic Ocean. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **104** (C9): 20,987–21,005.
- Augustyn, C.J., M.R. Lipinski, W.H.H. Sauer, M.J. Roberts and B.A. Mitchell-Innes (1994). Chokka squid on the Agulhas Bank: life history and ecology. *South African Journal of Science*, **90**(3): 143–154.
- Bang, N.D. (1970). Dynamic interpretations of a detailed surface temperature chart of the Agulhas Current retroflexion [sic] and fragmentation area. *South African Geographical Journal*, **52**(12): 67–76.
- Bang, N.D. (1970). Major eddies and frontal structures in the Agulhas Current retroflexion [sic] area in March, 1969. In *Symposium “Oceanography South Africa 1970”*, South African National Committee for Oceanographic Research, 16 pp.
- Bang, N.D. (1972). Logic intensive versus data intensive methods in oceanographic planning, analysis and prediction. In *Proceedings of ‘Conference 72’*, South African Geophysical Society, Johannesburg.
- Bang, N.D. (1973). Oceanography: Oceanographic Environment of Southern Africa. In *Standard Encyclopaedia of Southern Africa*, editors J.J. Spies and P.C. du Plessis, Vol. 8, Nasou, Cape Town, pp. 282–286.
- Bang, N.D. and W.R.H. Andrews (1974). Direct current measurements of a shelf-edge frontal jet in the southern Benguela system. *Journal of Marine Research*, **32**(3):

- 405–417.
- Barange, M. (1994). Acoustic identification, classification and structure of biological patchiness on the edge of the Agulhas Bank and its relation to frontal features. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **14**: 333–347.
- Barange, M., E.A. Pakhomov, R. Perissinotto, P.W. Froneman, H.M. Verheye, J. Taunton-Clark and M.I. Lucas (1998). Pelagic community structure of the subtropical convergence region south of Africa and in the mid-Atlantic Ocean. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **45**(10): 1663–1687.
- Barlow, E.W. (1931). Currents in the western portion of the Indian Ocean. Introduction. *Marine Observer*, **8**(90): 130–132.
- Barlow, E.W. (1931). Currents in the western portion of the Indian Ocean. II – Currents during the S.W. Monsoon period. *Marine Observer*, **8**(93): 193–194.
- Barlow, E.W. (1931). Currents in the western portion of the Indian Ocean. III – Currents during the N.E. Monsoon period (northern winter and southern summer) and general summary. *Marine Observer*, **8**(96): 254–259.
- B[arlow], E.W. (1932). Major James Rennell. *Marine Observer*, **9**(101): 94–98.
- Barlow, E.W. (1933). Currents in the southern Indian Ocean, winter season. *Marine Observer*, **10**(111): 99.
- Barlow, E.W. (1933). Currents in the southern Indian Ocean, summer season and general summary. *Marine Observer*, **10**(112): 132–135.
- Barlow, E.W. (1935). The 1910 to 1935 survey of the currents of the Indian Ocean and China Seas. *Marine Observer*, **12**(120): 153–163.
- Barnier, B., P. Marchesiello, A. Pimenta de Miranda, J.-M. Molines and M. Coulibaly (1998). A sigma-coordinate primitive equation model for studying the circulation in the South Atlantic. Part I: Model configuration with error estimates. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **45**(4–5): 573–608.
- Barton, E.D. and A.E. Hill (1989). Abyssal flow through the Amirante Trench (western Indian Ocean). *Deep-Sea Research*, **36**(7): 1121–1126.
- Basto, A. de M. (1945). *Diario da viagem de Vasco da Gama*. Vol. 1. Editora, Porto, 150 pp.
- Bé, A.W.H. and J.C. Duplessy (1976). Subtropical convergence fluctuations and quaternary climates in the middle latitudes of the Indian ocean. *Science*, **194**(4263): 419–422.
- Beal, L.M. (1997). Observations of the velocity structure of the Agulhas Current. Ph. D. thesis, University of Southampton, 158 pp.
- Beal, L.M. and H.L. Bryden (1997). Observations of an Agulhas Undercurrent. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **44**(9–10): 1715–1724.
- Beal, L.M. and H.L. Bryden (1999). The velocity and vorticity structure of the Agulhas Current at 32° S. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **104**(C3): 5151–5176.
- Beal, L.M., A. Field and A.L. Gordon (2000). Spreading of Red Sea overflow waters in the Indian Ocean. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **105**(C4): 8549–8564.
- Becker, R. (1938). Über den jährlichen Temperaturgang auf dem Indischen und Stillen Ozean. *Annalen der Hydrographie, Berlin*, **66**(7): 338–340.
- Beckley, L.E. (1983). Sea-surface temperature variability around Cape Recife, South Africa. *South African Journal of Science*, **79**(11): 436–438.
- Beckley, L.E. (1988). Spatial and temporal variability in sea temperature in Algoa Bay, South Africa. *South African Journal of Science*, **84**(1): 67–69.
- Beckley, L.E. and R.C. van Ballegooyen (1992). Oceanographic conditions during three ichthyoplankton surveys of the Agulhas Current in 1990/91. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **12**: 3–17.
- Beckley, L.E. and J.D. Hewitson (1994). Distribution and abundance of clupeoid larvae along the east coast of South Africa in 1990/91. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **14**: 205–212.
- Beckley, L.E. (1998). The Agulhas Current ecosystem with particular reference to dispersal of fish larvae. In *Large Marine Ecosystems of the Indian Ocean*, editors K. Sherman, E. N. Okemwa and M. J. Ntiba, Blackwell Science, Oxford, pp. 255–276.
- Beismann, J.-O., R.H. Käse and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (1999). On the influence of submarine ridges on translation and stability of Agulhas rings. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **104**(C4): 7897–7906.
- Belkin, I.M. and A.L. Gordon (1996). Southern Ocean fronts from the Greenwich meridian to Tasmania. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **101**(C2): 3675–3696.
- Bennett, S.L. (1988). *Where Three Oceans Meet: the Agulhas retroflection region*. Doctoral dissertation, Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution and Massachusetts Institute of Technology, WHOI-88-51, 367 pp.
- Berghaus, H. (1867). Welt-karte zur Übersicht der Meeres-Strömungen und das Schnellverkehrs. In (1988) *Hand-atlas über alle Theile der Erde und über das Weltgebäude*, editor A. Stieler, Gotha, 95 charts.
- Berghaus, H. (1845). *Physikalischer Atlas*. Erster Band. Verlag J. Perthes, Gotha, 234 pp.
- Biastoch, A. (1998). Zirkulation und Dynamik in der Agulhasregion anhand eines numerischen Modells. *Berichte aus dem Institut für Meereskunde an der Christian-Albrechts-Universität, Kiel*, **301**, 118 pp.
- Biastoch, A. and W. Krauss (1999). The role of mesoscale eddies in the source regions of the Agulhas Current. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **29**(9): 2303–2317.
- Biastoch, A., C.J.C. Reason, J.R.E. Lutjeharms and O. Boebel (1999). The importance of flow in the Mozambique Channel to seasonality in the greater Agulhas Current system. *Geophysical Research Letters*, **26**(21): 3321–3324.
- Blanke, B., C. Roy, P. Penven, S. Speich, J. McWilliams and G. Nelson (2002). Linking wind and interannual upwelling variability in a regional model of the southern Benguela. *Geophysical Research Letters*, **29**(24): article number 2188.
- Boddem, J. and R. Schlitzer (1995). Interocean exchange and

- meridional mass and heat fluxes in the South Atlantic. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **100**(C8): 15,821–15,834.
- Boden, B.P., C.M. Duncombe Rae and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (1988). The distribution of the diatoms of the S. W. Indian Ocean waters between Cape Town and the Prince Edward Island archipelago. *South African Journal of Science*, **84**(10): 811–818.
- Boebel, O., C. Duncombe Rae, S. Garzoli, J. Lutjeharms, P. Richardson, T. Rossby, C. Schmid and W. Zenk (1997). Float experiment studies interocean exchanges at the tip of Africa. *Eos, Transactions of the American Geophysical Union*, **79**(1): 1, 7–8.
- Boebel, O., C. Schmid and M. Jochum (1998). Physical Oceanography. In *Die Expedition ANTARKTIS-XIV/4 mit FS "Polarstern" 1997*, editor K. Fütterer, *Berichte zur Polarforschung* **259**, pp. 6–20.
- Boebel, O., S. Anderson-Fontana, C. Schmid, I. Ansorge, P. Lazarevich, J. Lutjeharms, M. Prater, T. Rossby, and W. Zenk (2000). KAPEX RAFOS Float Data Report 1997–1999. Part A: The Agulhas- and South Atlantic Current Components. *GSO Technical Report 2000–2; UCT Oceanography Report 2000–1; Berichte aus dem Institut für Meereskunde an der Christian-Albrechts-Universität – Kiel*, IFM 318, 194 pp.
- Boebel, O. and C. Barron (2003). A comparison of in-situ float velocities with altimeter derived geostrophic velocities. *Deep-Sea Research II*, **50**(1): 119–139.
- Boebel, O., J. Lutjeharms, C. Schmid, W. Zenk, T. Rossby and C. Barron (2003). The Cape Cauldron: a regime of turbulent inter-ocean exchange. *Deep-Sea Research II*, **50**(1): 57–86.
- Boebel, O., T. Rossby, J. Lutjeharms, W. Zenk and C. Barron (2003). Path and variability of the Agulhas Return Current. *Deep-Sea Research II*, **50**(1): 35–56.
- Boudra, D.B. and W.P.M. de Ruijter (1986). The wind-driven circulation in the South Atlantic-Indian Ocean – II. Experiments using a multi-layer numerical model. *Deep-Sea Research*, **33**(4): 447–482.
- Boudra, D.B. and E.P. Chassignet (1988). Dynamics of Agulhas retroflection and ring formation in a numerical model. I. The vorticity balance. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **18**(2): 280–303.
- Boudra, D.B., K.A. Maillet and E.P. Chassignet (1989). Numerical modeling of Agulhas retroflection and ring formation with isopycnal outcropping. In *Meso-scale/Synoptic Coherent Structures in Geophysical Turbulence*, editors J.C.J. Nihoul and B.M. Jamart, Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp. 315–335.
- Boyd, A.J., B.B.S. Tromp and D.A. Horstman (1985). The hydrology of the South African south-western coast between Cape Point and Danger Point in 1975. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **3**: 145–168.
- Boyd, A.J., J. Taunton-Clark and G.P.J. Oberholster (1992). Spatial features of the near-surface and midwater circulation patterns off western and southern South Africa and their role in the life histories of various commercially fished species. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **12**: 189–206.
- Boyd, A.J. and F.A. Shillington (1994). Physical forcing and circulation patterns on the Agulhas Bank. *South African Journal of Science*, **90**(3): 114–122.
- Bravo, M. (1993). James Rennell: antiquarian of ocean currents. *Ocean Challenge*, **4**(1/2): 41–50.
- Brennecke, W. (1915). Ozeanographische Arbeiten S.M.S. Möwe im westlichen Indischen Ozean 1913. *Annalen der Hydrographie und Maritimen Meteorologie*, **43**(8): 337–343.
- Brinca, L., F. Rey, C. Silva and R. Sætre (1981). A survey on the marine fish resources of Mozambique. *Reports on Surveys with the R/V Dr Fridtjof Nansen*, Instituto de Desenvolvimento Pesqueiro, Maputo, Institute of Marine Research, Bergen, 58 pp.
- Brinca, L., A. Jorge da Silva, L. Sousa, I.M. Sousa and R. Sætre (1983). A survey of the fish resources at Sofala Bank, Mozambique. *Reports on Surveys with the R/V Dr Fridtjof Nansen*, Serviço de Investigações Pesqueiras, Maputo, Institute of Marine Research, Bergen, 70 + 15 pp.
- Brown, A.C. (1997). John D. F. Gilchrist and the early years of marine science in South Africa. In *A Century of Marine Science in South Africa*, editors A.I.L. Payne and J.R.E. Lutjeharms, Sea Fisheries Research Institute, Royal Society of South Africa, pp. 2–16 and *Transactions of the Royal Society of South Africa*, **52**(1): 2–16.
- Brundrit, G.B. and L.V. Shannon (1989). Cape storms and the Agulhas Current: a glimpse of the future? *South African Journal of Science*, **85**(10): 619–620.
- Brundrit, G.B. and L. Krige (1994). Heard Island signals through the Agulhas retroflection region. *Journal of the Acoustical Society of America*, **96**(4): 2464–2468.
- Bryantsev, V.A., S.V. Pavlukhin and A.S. Pelevin (1979). Characteristics of geostrophic currents and the Subtropical Convergence zone in the Southwestern Indian Ocean. *Oceanology*, **19**(4): 395–399.
- Bryden, H.L. and L.M. Beal (2001). Role of the Agulhas Current in Indian Ocean circulation and associated heat and freshwater fluxes. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **48**(8): 1821–1845.
- Bryden, H.L., L. M. Beal and L.M. Duncan (2004). Structure and transport of the Agulhas Current and its temporal variability. *Journal of Oceanography*, submitted.
- Buchan, A. (1895). Report on oceanic circulations based on observations made on board H.M.S. Challenger and other observations. *Challenger Reports*, II (Physics and Chemistry). Part VIII, appendix to Summary, 38 pp.
- Bunker, A.F. (1980). Trends of variables and energy fluxes over the Atlantic Ocean from 1948 to 1972. *Monthly Weather Review*, **108**(6): 720–732.
- Bunker, A.F. (1988). Surface energy fluxes of the South Atlantic Ocean. *Monthly Weather Review*, **116**(4): 809–823.
- Byrne, D.A., A.L. Gordon and W.F. Haxby (1995). Agulhas Eddies: a synoptic view using Geosat ERM data. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **25**(5): 902–917.
- Camden-Smith, F., L.-A. Perrins, R.V. Dingle and G.B.

- Brundrit (1981). A preliminary report on long-term bottom-current measurements and sediment transport/erosion in the Agulhas Passage, Southwest Indian Ocean. *Marine Geology*, **39**: M81–M88.
- Carter, R.A., H.F. McMurray and J.L. Largier (1987). Thermocline characteristics and phytoplankton dynamics in Agulhas Bank waters. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **5**: 327–336.
- Carter, R. and J. d'Aubrey (1988). Inorganic nutrients in Natal continental shelf waters. In *Coastal Ocean Studies off Natal, South Africa*, editor E.H. Schumann, Lecture Notes on Coastal and Estuarine Studies 26, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, pp. 131–151.
- Carter, R.A. and M.H. Schleyer (1988). Plankton distributions in Natal coastal waters. In *Coastal Ocean Studies off Natal, South Africa*, editor E.H. Schumann, Lecture Notes on Coastal and Estuarine Studies 26, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, pp. 152–177.
- Catzel, R. and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (1987). Agulhas Current border phenomena along the Agulhas Bank south of Africa. *CSIR Research Report*, **635**, 22 pp. + 30 plates + addenda.
- Chapman, P., C.M. Duncombe Rae and B.R. Allanson (1987). Nutrients, chlorophyll and oxygen relationships in the surface layers at the Agulhas retroflection. *Deep-Sea Research*, **34**(8): 1399–1416.
- Chapman, P. (1988). On the occurrence of oxygen-depleted water south of Africa and its implications for Agulhas–Atlantic mixing. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **7**: 267–294.
- Chapman, P. and J.L. Largier (1989). On the origin of Agulhas Bank bottom water. *South African Journal of Science*, **85**(8): 515–519.
- Chapman, P., S.F. DiMarco, R.E. Davis and A.C. Coward (2003). Flow at intermediate depths round Madagascar based on ALACE float trajectories. *Deep-Sea Research II*, **50**(12–13): 1957–1986.
- Chassignet, E.P. and D.B. Boudra (1987). Dynamics of Agulhas retroflection and ring formation in a quasi-isopycnal coordinate numerical model. In *Three Dimensional Models of Marine and Estuarine Dynamics*, editors J.C.J. Nihoul and B.M. Jamart, Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp. 169–194.
- Chassignet, E.P. and D.B. Boudra (1988). Dynamics of Agulhas retroflection and ring formation in a numerical model. II. Energetics and ring formation. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **18**(2): 304–319.
- Chassignet, E.P., D.B. Olson and D.B. Boudra (1989). Evolution of rings in numerical models and observations. In *Mesoscale/Synoptic Coherent Structures in Geophysical Turbulence*, editors J.C.J. Nihoul and B.M. Jamart, Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp. 337–356.
- Cheney, R.A., J.G. Marsh and B.D. Beckley (1983). Global mesoscale variability from collinear tracks of SEASAT altimeter data. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **88**(C7): 4343–4354.
- Christensen, M.S. (1980). Sea-surface temperature charts for Southern Africa, south of 26°S. *South African Journal of Science*, **76**(2): 541–546.
- Chun, C. (1900). *Aus den Tiefen des Weltmeeres. Schilderungen von der Deutschen Tiefsee – Expedition*. Gustav Fisher, Jena, 549 pp.
- Chun, C. (et al.) (1902–1940). *Wissenschaftliche Ergebnisse der Deutschen Tiefsee – Expedition auf dem Dampfer Valdivia, 1898–1899*. Gustav Fischer, Jena, 24 volumes.
- Clement, A.C. and A.L. Gordon (1995). The absolute velocity field of Agulhas eddies and the Benguela Current. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **100**(C11): 22,591–22,601.
- Clowes, A.J. and G.E.R. Deacon (1935). The deep-water circulation of the Indian Ocean. *Nature*, **136**(3450): 936–938.
- Clowes, A.J. (1950). An introduction to the hydrology of South African waters. Fisheries and Marine, Biological Survey Division, Union of South Africa, *Investigational Reports*, **12**: 42 pp.
- Cockroft, V.G., V.M. Peddemors, P.G. Ryan and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (1990). Cetacean sightings in the Agulhas Retroflection, Agulhas Rings and Subtropical Convergence. *South African Journal of Antarctic Research*, **20**(2): 64–67.
- Colburn, J.G. (1975). *The thermal structure of the Indian Ocean*. International Indian Ocean Expedition Oceanographic Monographs, Number 2, An East-west Center Book, The University Press of Hawaii, Honolulu, 173 pp.
- Cooke, A., J.R.E. Lutjeharms and P. Vasseur (2004). Marine and coastal ecosystems. In *The Natural History of Madagascar*, editors: S. Goodman and J. P. Benstead, The University of Chicago Press, Chicago, pp. 179–209.
- Crimp, S.J., J.R.E. Lutjeharms and S.J. Mason (1998). Sensitivity of a tropical-temperate trough to sea-surface temperature anomalies in the Agulhas retroflection region. *Water SA*, **24**(2): 93–101.
- CSIR (1985). *A decade in oceanology. Activities of the National Research Institute for Oceanology, 1974–1984*. Council for Scientific and Industrial Research, Stellenbosch, CSIR Report, **T/SEA 8514**, 28 pp.
- CSIR (1988). *CSIR. Review of activities in oceanology, 1985–1987*. Council for Scientific and Industrial Research, Stellenbosch, 40 pp.
- Daniault, N. and Y. Menard (1985). Eddy kinetic energy distribution in the Southern Ocean from altimetry and FGGE drifting buoys. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **90**(C6): 18,877–11,889.
- Darbyshire, J. (1964). A hydrological investigation of the Agulhas Current area. *Deep-Sea Research*, **11**(5): 781–815.
- Darbyshire, J. (1972). The effect of bottom topography on the Agulhas Current. *Reviews of Pure and Applied Geophysics*, **101**(9): 208–220.
- Darbyshire, M. (1966). Agulhas Current (and Mozambique Current). In *The Encyclopaedia of Oceanography*, editor R. W. Fairbridge, Reinhold Publishing Corporation, New York, pp. 23–28,



- Darbyshire, M. (1966). The surface waters near the coast of Southern Africa. *Deep-Sea Research*, **13**(1): 57–81.
- Deacon, G.E.R. (1933). A general account of the hydrology of the South Atlantic Ocean. *Discovery Report*, **7**: 171–238.
- Deacon, G.E.R. (1937). The hydrology of the Southern Ocean. *Discovery Report*, **15**: 124 pp.
- Deacon, G.E.R. (1960). The Indian Ocean Expedition. *Nature*, **187**(4737): 561–562.
- Deacon, G.E.R. (1982). Physical and biological zonation in the Southern Ocean. *Deep-Sea Research*, **29**(1):1–15.
- De Cuevas, B.A., G.B. Brundrit and A.M. Shipley (1986). Low-frequency sea-level fluctuations along the coasts of Namibia and South Africa. *Geophysical Journal of the Royal Astronomical Society*, **87**(1): 1–15.
- De Decker, A.H.B. (1973). Agulhas Bank plankton. In *The Biology of the Indian Ocean*, editor B. Zeitzschel, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, pp. 189–219.
- De Decker, A.H.B. (1984). Near-surface copepod distribution in the south-western Indian and south-eastern Atlantic Ocean. *Annals of the South African Museum*, **93**(5): 303–370.
- Defant, A. (1932–1960). *Wissenschaftlichen Ergebnisse der Deutschen Atlantischen Expedition auf dem Forschungs- und Vermessungsschiff "Meteor" 1925–1927*. Bände I–XVI, Berlin.
- Defant, A. (1936). Ausbreitung- und Vermischungsvorgänge im antarktischen Bodenstrom und im subantarktischen Zwischenwasser. In *Quantitative Untersuchungen zur Statik und Dynamik des Atlantischen Ozeans*, in *Wissenschaftlichen Ergebnisse der Deutschen Atlantischen Expedition auf dem Forschungs- und Vermessungsschiff "Meteor" 1925–1927*, **6**(2): 53–96.
- Defant, A. (1941). Die absolute Topografie des physikalischen Meeresspiegels und der Druckflächen sowie die Wasserbewegung im Atlantischen Ozean. In *Quantitative Untersuchungen zur Statik und Dynamik des Atlantischen Ozeans*, in *Wissenschaftlichen Ergebnisse der Deutschen Atlantischen Expedition auf dem Forschungs- und Vermessungsschiff "Meteor" 1925–1927*, **6**(2): 191–260.
- Defant, A. (1941). Die relative Topografie einzelner Druckflächen im Atlantischen Ozean. *'Meteor' Forschungsergebnisse*, **6**(2/4): 183–190.
- Demarcq, H., R.G. Barlow and F.A. Shillington (2003). Climatology and variability of sea surface temperature and surface chlorophyll in the Benguela and Agulhas ecosystems as observed by satellite imagery. *African Journal of Marine Science*, **25**: 363–372.
- De Ruijter, W. (1982). Asymptotic analysis of the Agulhas and Brazil Current systems. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **12**(4): 361–373.
- De Ruijter, W.P.M. and D.B. Boudra (1985). The wind-driven circulation in the South Atlantic–Indian Ocean – I. Numerical experiments in a one-layer model. *Deep-Sea Research*, **32**(5): 557–574.
- De Ruijter, W.P.M., A. Biastoch, S.S. Drijfhout, J.R.E. Lutjeharms, R.P. Matano, T. Pichevin, P.J. van Leeuwen and W. Weijer (1999). Indian-Atlantic inter-ocean exchange: dynamics, estimation and impact. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **104**(C9): 20,885–20,911.
- De Ruijter, W.P.M., P.J. van Leeuwen and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (1999). Generation and evolution of Natal Pulses: solitary meanders in the Agulhas Current. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **29**(12): 3043–3055.
- De Ruijter, W.P.M., H. Ridderinkhof, J.R.E. Lutjeharms, M.W. Schouten and C. Veth (2002). Observations of the flow in the Mozambique Channel. *Geophysical Research Letters*, **29**(10): 1401–1403.
- De Ruijter, W.P.M., H.M. van Aken, E.J. Beier, J.R.E. Lutjeharms, R.P. Matano and M.W. Schouten (2003). Eddies and dipoles around South Madagascar: formation, pathways and large-scale impact. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **51**(3): 383–400.
- De Steur, L., P.J. van Leeuwen and S.S. Drijfhout (2004). Tracer leakage from modeled Agulhas rings. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **34**(6): 1387–1399.
- Deutsches Hydrographisches Institut (1960). *Monatskarten für den Indischen Ozean*. Deutsches Hydrographisches Institut, Hamburg, Public. 2422.
- De Villiers, S. (1998). Seasonal and interannual variability in phytoplankton biomass on the southern African continental shelf: evidence from satellite-derived pigment concentrations. In *Benguela Dynamics*, editors S.C. Pillar, C.L. Moloney, A.I.L. Payne and F.A. Shillington, *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **19**: 169–179.
- Dietrich, G. (1935). Aufbau und Dynamik des südlichen Agulhasstromgebietes. *Veröffentlichungen des Institut für Meereskunde an der Universität Berlin*, n.f. **A**(27): 79 pp.
- Dietrich, G. (1935). Zur Dynamik des Atlantischen Zweiges des Agulhasstromes. *Annalen der Hydrographie und Maritimen Meteorologie*, **63**: 383–387.
- Dietrich, G. (1936). Aufbau und Bewegung von Golfstrom und Agulhasstrom, eine vergleichende Betrachtung. *Naturwissenschaften*, **24**(15): 225–230.
- Dijkstra, H.A. and W.P.M. de Ruijter (2001). Barotropic instabilities of the Agulhas Current system and their relation to ring formation. *Journal of Marine Research*, **59**(4): 517–533.
- Dijkstra, H.A. and W.P.M. de Ruijter (2001). On the physics of the Agulhas: steady retroflection regimes. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **31**(10): 2971–2985.
- DiMarco, S.F., P. Chapman and W.D. Nowlin (2000). Satellite observations of upwelling on the continental shelf south of Madagascar. *Geophysical Research Letters*, **27**(24): 3965–3968.
- DiMarco, S.F., P. Chapman, W.D. Nowlin, P. Hacker, K.A. Donohue, M. Luther, G.C. Johnson and J.M. Toole (2002). Volume transport and property distributions of the Mozambique Channel. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **49**(7–8): 1481–1511.
- Dingle, R.V., G.V. Birch, J.M. Bremner, R.H. de Decker, A. du Plessis, J.A. Engelbrecht, M.J. Fincham, T. Fitton, B.W. Flemming, R.I. Gentle, S.H. Goodlad, A.K. Martin, E.G. Mills, G.J. Moir, R.J. Parker, S.H. Robson,

- J. Rogers, D.A. Salmon, W.G. Sieser, E.S.W. Simpson, C.P. Summerhayes, F. Westall, A. Winter and M.W. Woodborne (1987). Deep-sea sedimentary environments around southern Africa (South-East Atlantic and South-West Indian Oceans). *Annals of the South African Museum*, **98**(1): 1–27.
- Discovery Committee (1929). Discovery Investigations Station List, 1925–1927. *Discovery Reports*, **1**: 3–138.
- Donguy, J.R. and B. Piton (1969). A perçu des conditions hydrologiques de la partie nord du Canal de Mozambique. *Cahiers O.R.S.T. O. M., série Océanographie*, **7**(2): 3–26.
- Donguy, J.R. (1975). Les eaux superficielles tropicales de la partie occidentale de l’Océan Indien en 1966–1967. *Cahiers O.R.S.T.O.M.*, **13**(1): 31–47.
- Donguy, J.-R. and B. Piton (1991). The Mozambique Channel revisited. *Oceanologica Acta*, **14**(6): 549–558.
- Donohue, K.A., E. Firing and L. Beal (2000). Comparison of three velocity sections of the Agulhas Current and Agulhas Undercurrent. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **105**(C12): 28,585–28,593.
- Donohue, K. and J. Toole (2003). A near-synoptic survey of the southwest Indian Ocean. *Deep-Sea Research II*, **50**(12–13): 1893–1931.
- Döös, K. (1995). Inter-ocean exchange of water masses. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **100**(C7): 13,499–13,514.
- Drijfhout, S. S. (2003). Why anticyclones can split. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **33**(8): 1579–1591.
- Drijfhout, S.S., C.A. Katsman, L. de Steur, P.C.F. van der Vaart, P.J. van Leeuwen and C. Veth (2003). Modeling the initial, fast sea surface height decay of Agulhas ring “Astrid”. *Deep-Sea Research II*, **50**(1): 299–319.
- Duncan, C.P. (1968). An eddy in the Subtropical Convergence southwest of South Africa. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **73**(2): 531–534.
- Duncan, C.P. (1970). *The Agulhas Current*. Ph. D. dissertation, University of Hawaii, 76 pp.
- Duncan, C.P. and S.G. Schladow (1981). World surface currents from ship’s drift observations. *International Hydrographic Review*, **58**(2): 101–112.
- Duncombe Rae, C.M., L.V. Shannon and F.A. Shillington (1989). An Agulhas ring in the South Atlantic Ocean. *South African Journal of Science*, **85**(11): 747–748.
- Duncombe Rae, C.M. (1991). Agulhas retroflexion rings in the South Atlantic Ocean; an overview. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **11**: 327–344.
- Duncombe Rae, C.M., A.J. Boyd and R.J.M. Crawford (1992). “Predation” of anchovy by an Agulhas ring: a possible contributory cause of the very poor year class of 1989. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **12**: 167–173.
- Duncombe Rae, C.M., F.A. Shillington, J.J. Agenbag, J. Taunton-Clark and M.L. Gründlingh (1992). An Agulhas Ring in the South East Atlantic Ocean and its interaction with the Benguela upwelling frontal system. *Deep-Sea Research*, **39**(11/12): 2009–2027.
- Duncombe Rae, C.M., S.L. Garzoli and A.L. Gordon (1996). The eddy field of the southeast Atlantic Ocean: a statistical census from the Benguela Sources and Transports Project. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **101**(C5): 11,949–11,964.
- Eagle, G.A. and M.J. Orren (1985). A seasonal investigation of the nutrients and dissolved oxygen in the water column along two lines of stations south and west of South Africa. *National Research Institute for Oceanology, CSIR Research Report*, **567**: 52 pp.
- Engelmann, G. (1969). Christian Gottfried Ehrenberg, ein Wegbereiter der deutschen Tiefseeforschung. *Deutsche Hydrographische Zeitschrift*, **22**(2): 145–157.
- Evenson, G. and P.J. van Leeuwen (1996). Assimilation of Geosat altimeter data for the Agulhas Current using the ensemble Kalman filter with a quasigeostrophic model. *Monthly Weather Review*, **124**(1): 85–96.
- Feron, R.C.V., W.P.M. de Ruijter and D. Oskam (1992). Ring-shedding process in the Agulhas Current system. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **97**(C6): 9467–9477.
- Feron, R.C.V. (1995). The Southern Ocean western boundary currents: comparison of Fine Resolution Antarctic Model results with GEOSAT altimeter data. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **100**(C10): 4959–4975.
- Feron, R.C.V., W.P.M. de Ruijter and P.J. van Leeuwen (1998). A new method to determine the mean sea surface dynamic topography from satellite altimeter observations. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **103**(C1): 1343–1362.
- Ffield, A., J.M. Toole and W.D. Wilson (1997). Seasonal circulation in the South Indian Ocean. *Geophysical Research Letters*, **24**(22): 2773–2776.
- Fioux, M., F. Schott and J.C. Swallow (1986). Deep boundary currents in the western Indian Ocean revisited. *Deep-Sea Research*, **33**(4): 415–526.
- Findlay, A.G. (1866). *A directory for the navigation of the Indian Ocean*. Richard Holmes Laurie, London, 113 pp.
- Findlay, K.P., P.B. Best, G.J.B. Ross and V.G. Cockcroft (1992). The distribution of small odontocete cetaceans off the coasts of South Africa and Namibia. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **12**: 237–270.
- Fine, R.A., M.J. Warner and R.F. Weiss (1988). Water mass modification of the Agulhas retroflexion: chlorofluoromethane studies. *Deep-Sea Research*, **35**(3): 311–332.
- Fine, R.A. (1993). Circulation of Antarctic Intermediate Water in the South Indian Ocean. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **40**(10): 2021–2042.
- Flemming, B.W. (1978). Underwater sand dunes along the southeast African continental margin – observations and implications. *Marine Geology*, **26**(1/2): 177–198.
- Flemming, B.W. (1980). Sand transport and bedform patterns on the continental shelf between Durban and Port Elizabeth (Southeast African Continental Margin). *Sedimentary Geology*, **26**(1/3): 179–205.
- Flemming, B. and R. Hay (1988). Sediment distribution and dynamics of the Natal continental shelf. In *Coastal Ocean Studies off Natal, South Africa*, editor E.H. Schumann, Lecture Notes on Coastal and Estuarine Studies 26, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, pp. 47–80.

- Florenchie, P. and J. Veron (1998). South Atlantic Ocean circulation: Simulation experiments with a quasi-geostrophic model and assimilation of TOPEX/POSEIDON and ERS 1 altimeter data. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **103**(C11): 24,737–24,758.
- Flores, J.-A., R. Gersonde and F.J. Sierro (1999). Pleistocene fluctuations in the Agulhas Current Retroflexion based on the calcareous plankton record. *Marine Micropaleontology*, **37**(1): 1–22.
- Fowler, J.L. and A.J. Boyd (1998). Transport of anchovy and sardine eggs and larvae from the western Agulhas Bank to the west coast during the 1993/94 and 1994/95 spawning seasons. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **19**: 181–195.
- Fu, L.-L. (1986). Mass, heat and freshwater fluxes in the South Indian Ocean. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **16**(10): 1683–1693.
- Fu, L.-L. (1996). The circulation and its variability of the South Atlantic Ocean: first results from the TOPEX/POSEIDON mission. In *The South Atlantic: Present and Past Circulation*, editors: G. Wefer, W.H. Berger, G. Siedler and D. Webb, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, pp. 63–82.
- Ganachaud, A., C. Wunsch, J. Marotzke and J. Toole (2000). Meridional overturning and large-scale circulation of the Indian Ocean. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **105**(C11): 26,117–26,134.
- Ganachaud, A. (2003). Large-scale mass transports, water mass formation and diffusivities estimated from World Ocean Circulation Experiment (WOCE) hydrographic data. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **108**(C7): article number 3213.
- Garnier, E., J. Verron and B. Barnier (2003). Variability of the South Atlantic upper ocean circulation: a data assimilation experiment with 5 years of TOPEX/POSEIDON altimeter observations. *International Journal of Remote Sensing*, **24**(5): 911–934.
- Garraffo, Z., S.L. Garzoli, W. Haxby and D. Olson (1992). Analysis of a general circulation model. 2. Distribution of kinetic energy in the South Atlantic and Kuroshio/Oyashio systems. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **97**(C12): 20,139–20,153.
- Garrett, J. (1981). Oceanographic features revealed by the FGGE drifting buoy array. In *Oceanography from Space*, editor J. F. R. Gower, Plenum Press, New York, pp. 61–69.
- Garrett, J. (1981). The performance of the FGGE drifting buoy system. *Advances in Space Research*, **1**(4): 87–94.
- Garzoli, S.L. and A.L. Gordon (1995). Origins and variability of the Benguela Current. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **101**(C11): 22,591–22,601.
- Garzoli, S.L., A.L. Gordon, V. Kamenkovich, D. Pillsbury and C. Duncombe-Rae [sic] (1996). Variability and sources of the southeastern Atlantic circulation. *Journal of Marine Research*, **54**(6): 1039–1071.
- Garzoli, S.L., G.J. Goñi, A.J. Mariano and D.B. Olson (1997). Monitoring the upper southeastern Atlantic transports using altimeter data. *Journal of Marine Research*, **55**(3): 453–481.
- Garzoli, S.L., P.L. Richardson, C.M. Duncombe Rae, D.M. Fratantoni, G.J. Goñi and A.J. Roubicek (1999). Three Agulhas rings observed during the Benguela Current Experiment. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **104**(C9): 20,971–20,985.
- Garzoli, S.L. and J. Goni [sic] (2000). Combining altimeter observations and oceanographic data for ocean circulation and climate studies. In *Satellites, Oceanography and Society*, editor D. Halpern, Elsevier Oceanography Series 63, Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp. 79–97.
- Gerard, R. (1964). Étude de l'eau de mer de surface dans une baie de Nosy-Bé. *Cahiers O.R.S.T.O.M., série Océanographie*, **2**(2): 5–26.
- Gerber, M. (1993). The interaction of deep-water gravity waves and an annular current: Linear theory. *Journal of Fluid Mechanics*, **248**: 153–172.
- Gilchrist, J.D.F. (1902). Observations on the temperature and salinity of the sea around the Cape Peninsula. *Marine Investigations in South Africa*, **1**: 181–216 + 10 plates + p. 238.
- Gilchrist, J.D.F. (1904). Currents on the South African coast, as indicated by the course of drift bottles. *Marine Investigations in South Africa*, **2**: 101–113.
- Gilchrist, J.D.F. (1905). The South African marine fauna and its environment. In *Science in South Africa*, editors W. Flint and J.D.F. Gilchrist, Maskew Miller, Cape Town, pp. 182–197.
- Gilchrist, J.D.F. (1923). The South African seas. *South African Journal of Science*, **20**(1): 1–27.
- Gilchrist, J.D.F. (1925). II. Report of Director of Survey. In *Report of the Fisheries and Marine Biological Survey, Union of South Africa, June, 1923 – June, 1925*. **4**. Cape Town; Government Printers: xix–lx.
- Gill, A.E. (1977). Coastally trapped waves in the atmosphere. *Quarterly Journal of the Royal Meteorological Society*, **103**(437): 431–440.
- Gill, A.E. and E.H. Schumann (1979). Topographically induced changes in the structure of an inertial coastal jet: application to the Agulhas Current. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **9**(5): 975–991.
- Goni [sic], G.J., S.L. Garzoli, A.J. Roubicek, D.B. Olson and O.B. Brown (1997). Agulhas ring dynamics from TOPEX/POSEIDON satellite altimeter data. *Journal of Marine Research*, **55**(5): 861–883.
- Gordon, A.L., K.-I. Horai and M. Donn (1983). Southern hemisphere western boundary current variability revealed by GEOS 3 altimeter. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **88**(1): 755–762.
- Gordon, A.L. (1985). Indian-Atlantic transfer of thermocline water at the Agulhas retroflexion. *Science*, **227**(4690): 1030–1033.
- Gordon, A.L. (1986). Inter-ocean exchange of thermocline water. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **91**(C4): 5037–5046.
- Gordon, A.L., J.R.E. Lutjeharms and M.L. Gründlingh (1987). Select hydrographic sections from the Agulhas research cruises of the research vessels *Knorr* and *Meiring*



- Naude 0 1983. Lamont-Doherty Geological Observatory of Columbia University, *Technical Report LDGO-87 - 1*.
- Gordon, A.L., J.R.E. Lutjeharms and M.L. Gründlingh (1987). Stratification and circulation at the Agulhas Retro-reflection. *Deep-Sea Research*, **34**(4): 565–599.
- Gordon, A.L. and W.F. Haxby (1990). Agulhas eddies invade the South Atlantic – evidence from GEOSAT altimeter and shipboard conductivity–temperature–depth survey. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **95**(C3): 3117–3125.
- Gordon, A.L., R.F. Weiss, W.M. Smethie and M.J. Warner (1992). Thermocline and intermediate water communication between the South Atlantic and Indian Oceans. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **97**(C5): 7223–7240.
- Gordon, A.L., K.T. Bosley and F. Aikman (1995). Tropical Atlantic water within the Benguela upwelling system at 27°S. *Deep-Sea Research*, **24**(1): 1–12.
- Gordon, A.L. (2003). The brawniest retroflection. *Nature*, **421**: 904–905.
- Goschen, W.S. and E.H. Schumann (1988). Ocean current and temperature structures in Algoa Bay and beyond in November 1986. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **7**: 101–116.
- Goschen, W.S. and E.H. Schumann (1990). Agulhas Current variability and inshore structures off the Cape Province, South Africa. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **95**(1): 667–678.
- Goschen, W.S. and E.H. Schumann (1994). An Agulhas Current intrusion into Algoa Bay during August 1988. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **14**: 47–57.
- Goschen, W.S. and E.H. Schumann (1995). Upwelling and the occurrence of cold water around Cape Recife, Algoa Bay, South Africa. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **16**: 57–67.
- Gould, J. (1993). James Rennell's view of the Atlantic circulation: a comparison with our present knowledge. *Ocean Challenge*, **4**(1/2): 26–32.
- Gründlingh, M.L. (1974). A description of inshore current reversals off Richards Bay based on airborne radiation thermometry. *Deep-Sea Research*, **21**(1): 47–55.
- Gründlingh, M.L. (1977). A Nimbus VII satellite-tracked buoy moored on the Mozambique Ridge. *South African Journal of Science*, **73**(12): 384–385.
- Gründlingh, M.L. (1977). Drift observations from Nimbus VI satellite-tracked buoys in the southwestern Indian Ocean. *Deep-Sea Research*, **24**(10): 903–913.
- Gründlingh, M.L. (1978). Drift of a satellite-tracked buoy in the southern Agulhas Current and Agulhas Return Current. *Deep-Sea Research*, **25**(12): 1209–1224.
- Gründlingh, M.L. (1979). Observation of a large meander in the Agulhas Current. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **84**(C7): 3776–3778.
- Gründlingh, M.L. and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (1979). Large scale flow patterns of the Agulhas Current system. *South African Journal of Science*, **75**(6): 269–270.
- Gründlingh, M.L. (1980). On the volume transport of the Agulhas Current. *Deep-Sea Research*, **27**(7): 557–563.
- Gründlingh, M.L. (1983). Eddies in the southern Indian Ocean and Agulhas Current. In *Eddies in Marine Science*, editor A.R. Robinson, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, pp. 245–264.
- Gründlingh, M.L. (1983). On the course of the Agulhas Current. *South African Geographical Journal*, **65**(1): 49–57.
- Gründlingh, M.L. (1984). An eddy over the northern Mozambique Ridge. *South African Journal of Science*, **80**(7): 324–329.
- Gründlingh, M.L. and A.F. Pearce (1984). Large vortices in the northern Agulhas Current. *Deep-Sea Research*, **31**(9): 1149–1156.
- Gründlingh, M.L. (1985). An intense cyclonic eddy east of the Mozambique Ridge. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **90**(C4): 7163–7167.
- Gründlingh, M.L. (1985). Features of the circulation in the Mozambique Basin in 1981. *Journal of Marine Research*, **43**(4): 779–792.
- Gründlingh, M.L. (1985). Occurrence of Red Sea Water in the Southwestern Indian Ocean, 1981. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **15**(2): 207–212.
- Gründlingh, M.L. (1986). Features of the northern Agulhas Current in spring, 1983. *South African Journal of Science*, **82**(1): 18–20.
- Gründlingh, M.L. (1987). Anatomy of a cyclonic eddy of the Mozambique Ridge Current. *Deep-Sea Research*, **34**(2): 237–251.
- Gründlingh, M.L. (1987). Cyclogenesis in the Mozambique Ridge Current. *Deep-Sea Research*, **34**(1): 89–103.
- Gründlingh, M.L. (1987). On the seasonal temperature variation in the southwestern Indian Ocean. *South African Geographical Journal*, **69**(2): 129–138.
- Gründlingh, M.L. (1988). Altimetry in the southwest Indian Ocean. *South African Journal of Science*, **84**(7): 568–573.
- Gründlingh, M.L. (1988). Review of cyclonic eddies in the Mozambique Ridge Current. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **6**: 193–206.
- Gründlingh, M.L., C.C. Stavropoulos and L.J. Watt (1988). The R. V. Meiring Naudé: Two decades of support to physical oceanography. *South African Journal of Science*, **84**(9): 746–748.
- Gründlingh, M.L. (1989). Drift of the SAA Helderberg wreckage in the Indian Ocean. *South African Journal of Science*, **85**(4): 209–211.
- Gründlingh, M.L. (1989). Two contra-rotating eddies of the Mozambique Ridge Current. *Deep-Sea Research*, **36**(1): 149–153.
- Gründlingh, M.L. and A.F. Pearce (1990). Frontal features of the Agulhas Current in the Natal Bight. *South African Geographical Journal*, **72**(1): 11–14.
- Gründlingh, M.L. (1991). Draaikolke suid van die Mosambiekkanaal. *Suid-Afrikaanse Tydskrif vir Natuurwetenskap en Tegnologie*, **10**(3): 137–141.
- Gründlingh, M.L., R.A. Carter and R.C. Stanton (1991). Circulation and water properties of the Southwest Indian Ocean, Spring 1987. *Progress in Oceanography*, **28**(4): 305–342.



- Gründlingh, M.L. (1992). Agulhas Current meanders: review and a case study. *South African Geographical Journal*, **74**(1): 19–28.
- Gründlingh, M.L. (1993). On the satellite-derived wave climate off southern Africa. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **13**: 223–235.
- Gründlingh, M.L. (1993). On the winter flow in the southern Mozambique Channel. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **40**(2): 409–418.
- Gründlingh, M.L. (1994). Evidence of surface wave enhancement in the southwest Indian Ocean. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **99**(C4): 7917–7927.
- Gründlingh, M.L. (1994). Some characteristics of satellite-derived wave heights in the South Atlantic Ocean. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **41**(2): 413–428.
- Gründlingh, M.L. (1995). Tracking eddies in the southeast Atlantic and southwest Indian oceans with TOPEX/POSEIDON. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **100**(C12): 24,977–24,986.
- Gründlingh, M.L., G.W. Bailey, F.A. Shillington, E.H. Schumann and J.J. Agenbag (1995). Physical oceanographic activities in South Africa. 1991–1994. *South African Journal of Science*, **91**(5): 247–254.
- Gründlingh, M.L. and M. Rossouw (1995). Wave attenuation in the Agulhas Current. *South African Journal of Science*, **91**(7): 357–359.
- Gründlingh, M.L., J.R.E. Lutjeharms, G. Brundrit, J.J. Agenbag, A. Boyd, G. Nelson, A. Johnson, M. Roberts, L. Shannon and E.H. Schumann (1999). Physical oceanographic activities in South Africa: 1995–1998. *South African Journal of Science*, **95**(6/7): 281–288.
- Gutshabash, Ye. Sh. and I.V. Lavrenov (1986). Swell transformation in the Cape [sic] Agulhas Current. *Izvestiya, Atmospheric and Oceanic Physics*, **22**(6): 494–497.
- Haines, M., M. Luther, Z. Ji and R. Fine (1995). Particle trajectories in an Indian Ocean Model. In *1995 U. S. WOCE Report*, U. S. WOCE Implementation Report Number 10, pp. 34–35.
- Harries, H.D. (1932). Über die Veränderlichkeit von Monatswerten meteorologischer und hydrologischer Elementen der Äquatorialsee. *Annalen der Hydrographie, Berlin*, **60**(12): 496–499.
- Harris, T.F.W. (1964). Notes on Natal coastal waters. *South African Journal of Science*, **60**(8): 237–241.
- Harris, T.F.W. and C.C. Stavropoulos (1967). Some experience with a radiation thermometer over the Agulhas Current. *South African Journal of Science*, **63**(4): 132–136.
- Harris, T.F.W. (1970). Planetary-type waves in the South West Indian Ocean. *Nature*, **227**(5262): 1043–1044.
- Harris, T.F.W. (1972). Sources of the Agulhas Current in the spring of 1964. *Deep-Sea Research*, **19**(9): 633–650.
- Harris, T.F.W. and N.D. Bang (1974). Topographic Rossby waves in the Agulhas Current. *South African Journal of Science*, **70**(7): 212–214.
- Harris, T.F.W. (1978). Review of coastal currents in Southern African waters. *South African National Science Programmes Report, CSIR Report*, **30**, vii + 103 pp.
- Harris, T.F.W. and C.C. Stavropoulos (1978). Satellite tracked drifters between Africa and Antarctica. *Bulletin of the American Meteorological Society*, **59**(1): 51–59.
- Harris, T.F.W. and D. van Foreest (1978). The Agulhas Current in March 1969. *Deep-Sea Research*, **25**(6): 549–561.
- Harris, T.F.W., R. Legeckis and D. van Forest [sic] (1978). Satellite infra-red images in the Agulhas Current system. *Deep-Sea Research*, **25**(6): 543–548.
- Hastenrath, S. and P.J. Lamb (1979). *Climate Atlas of the Indian Ocean. Part I: Surface climate and atmospheric circulation*. University of Wisconsin Press, Madison, xix pp + 97 charts.
- Hastenrath, S. and P.J. Lamb (1979). *Climatic Atlas of the Indian Ocean. Part II: The ocean heat budget*. University of Wisconsin Press, Madison, xv pp + 84 charts.
- Herbette, S., Y. Morel and M. Arhan (2003). Erosion of a surface vortex by a seamount. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **33**(8): 1664–1679.
- Heydorn, A.E.F., N.D. Bang, A.F. Pearce, B.W. Flemming, R.A. Carter, M.H. Schleyer, P.F. Berry, G.R. Hughes, A.J. Bass, J.H. Wallace, R.P. van der Elst, R.J.M. Crawford and P.A. Shelton (1978). Ecology of the Agulhas Current region: an assessment of biological responses to environmental parameters in the South-West Indian Ocean. *Transactions of the Royal Society of South Africa*, **43**(2): 151–190.
- Heywood, K.J. and Y.K. Somayajulu (1997). Eddy activity in the South Indian Ocean from ERS-1 altimetry. *Proceedings of the 3rd ERS Symposium on "Space at the Service of our Environment"*, Florence, March 1997, ESA SP-414, 1479–1483.
- Ho, C.-R., Q. Zheng and N.-J. Kuo (2004). SeaWiFS observations of upwelling south of Madagascar: long-term variability and interaction with East Madagascar Current. *Deep-Sea Research II*, **51**(1): 59–67.
- Hofmann, E.C. (1985). The large-scale horizontal structure of the Antarctic Circumpolar Current from FGGE drifters. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **90**(C7): 7087–7097.
- Holfort, J. and G. Siedler (2001). The meridional oceanic transports of heat and nutrients in the South Atlantic. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **31**(1): 5–29.
- Holland, W.R., V. Zlotnicki and L.-L. Fu (1991). Modelled time-dependent flow in the Agulhas retroflexion region as deduced from altimeter data assimilation. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **10**: 407–427.
- Holliday, N.P. and J.F. Read (1998). Surface oceanic fronts between Africa and Antarctica. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **45**(2–3): 217–238.
- Howard, W.R. and W.L. Prell (1992). Late quaternary surface circulation of the southern Indian Ocean and its relationship to orbital variation. *Paleoceanography*, **7**(1): 79–117.
- Hughes, G.R., P. Luschi, R. Mencacci and F. Papi (1998). The 7000-km oceanic journey of a leatherback turtle tracked by satellite. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology*, **229**(2): 209–217.

- Hulley, P.A. and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (1995). The southwestern limit for the warm water, mesopelagic ichthyofauna of the Indo-West Pacific: Lanternfish (*Myctophidae*), a case study. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **15**: 185–205.
- Hunter, I.[T.] (1981). On the land breeze circulation off the Natal coast. *South African Journal of Science*, **77**(8): 376–378.
- Hunter, I.T. (1987). The weather of the Agulhas Bank and Cape south coast. (South African) Council for Scientific and Industrial Research. *CSIR Research Report*, **634**, 184 pp.
- Hunter, I.T. (1988). Climate and weather off Natal. In *Coastal Ocean Studies off Natal, South Africa*, editor E.H. Schumann, Lecture Notes on Coastal and Estuarine Studies 26, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, pp. 81–100.
- Hutson, W.H. (1980). The Agulhas Current during the late Pleistocene: analysis of modern faunal analogs. *Science*, **207**(4426): 64–66.
- Hydrographic Department (1896). *List of oceanic depths and serial temperature observations during the years 1895*. Great Britain, Hydrographic Department, London.
- Irvine, D.E. and D.G. Tilley (1988). Ocean wave directional spectra and wave-current interaction in the Agulhas from the Shuttle Imaging Radar-B synthetic aperture radar. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **93**(C12): 15,389–15,401.
- Jacobs, S.S. and D.T. Georgi (1977). Observations on the Southwest Indian/Antarctic Ocean. *Deep-Sea Research*, **24** (supplement): 43–84.
- Johnson, G.C., D.L. Musgrave, B.A. Warren, A. Ffield and D.B. Olson (1998). Flow of bottom and deep water in the Amirante Passage and Mascarene Basin. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **103**(C13): 30,973–30,984.
- Jorge da Silva, A., A. Mubango and R. Sætre (1981). Information on oceanographic cruises in the Mozambique Channel. *Revista de Investigação Pesqueira*, **2**, Instituto de Desenvolvimento Pesqueiro, Maputo, República Popular de Moçambique, 89 pp.
- Jorge da Silva, A. (1984). Circulation system and areas of potentially successful tuna fishing with surface methods off Mozambique. *Revista de Investigação Pesqueira*, **11**, Instituto de Investigação Pesqueiro, Moçambique, pp. 5–40.
- Jorge da Silva, A. (1984). Hydrology and fish distribution at the Sofala Bank (Mozambique). *Revista de Investigação Pesqueira*, **12**, Instituto de Investigação Pesqueiro, Moçambique, pp. 5–36.
- Jorge da Silva, A. (1984). Report on the oceanographic investigations carried out at the Sofala Bank by the Soviet trawler “Sevastopolsky Rybak” in September–December 1982. *Revista de Investigação Pesqueira*, **10**, Instituto de Investigação Pesqueiro, Maputo, Moçambique, pp. 5–35.
- Jury, M.(R.) and N. Walker (1988). Marine boundary layer modification across the edge of the Agulhas Current. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **93**(C1): 647–654.
- Jury, M.R. and S. Courtney (1991). A transition in weather over the Agulhas Current. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **19**: 159–171.
- Jury, M.R. and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (1993). Die struktuur en die aandrywingskragte van die 1991–1992 droogte in suidelike Afrika. *Suid-Afrikaanse Tydskrif vir Natuurwetenskap en Tegnologie*, **12**(1): 8–16.
- Jury, M.R., H.R. Valentine and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (1993). Influence of the Agulhas Current on summer rainfall on the southeast coast of South Africa. *Journal of Applied Meteorology*, **32**(7): 1282–1287.
- Jury, M.R. (1994). A review of the meteorology of the eastern Agulhas Bank. *South African Journal of Science*, **90**(3): 109–113.
- Jury, M.R. (1994). A thermal front within the marine atmospheric boundary layer over the Agulhas Current south of Africa: Composite aircraft observations. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **99**(C2): 3297–3304.
- Jury, M.R. (1995). A review of research on ocean-atmosphere interactions and South African climate variability. *South African Journal of Science*, **91**(6): 289–294.
- Jury, M.R., B. Pathack, C.J. de W [sic] Rautenbach and J. vanHeerden [sic] (1996). Drought over South Africa and Indian Ocean SST: statistical and GCM results. *The Global Atmosphere and Ocean System*, **4**(1):47–63.
- Jury, M.R. and M. Majodina (1997). Preliminary climatology of southern Africa extreme weather 1973–1992. *Theoretical and Applied Climatology*, **56**(1–2): 103–112.
- Jury, M., M. Rouault, S. Weeks and M. Schormann (1997). Atmospheric boundary-layer fluxes and structure across a land–sea transition zone in south-eastern Africa. *Boundary-Layer Meteorology*, **83**(2): 311–330.
- Kamenkovich, V.M., Y.P. Leonov, D.A. Nechaev, D.A. Byrne and A.L. Gordon (1996). On the influence of bottom topography on the Agulhas eddy. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **26**(6): 892–192.
- Katsman, C.A., P.C.F. van der Vaart, H.A. Dijkstra and W.P.M. de Ruijter (2003). Stability of multilayer ocean vortices: a parameter study including realistic Gulf Stream and Agulhas Rings. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **33**(6): 1197–1218.
- Kerhallet, M.C.P. de (1851). Considérations générales sur l’océan Indien. *Annales Hydrographiques*, **2e Sem**, pp. 219–264.
- Kerhallet, M.C.P. de (1852). Considérations générales sur l’océan Atlantique. *Annales Hydrographiques*, **1er Sem**, pp. 33–143.
- Knauss, J.A. (1961). The International Indian Ocean Expedition. *Science*, **134**(3491): 1674–1676.
- Kolla, V., L. Sullivan, S.S. Streeter and M.G. Langseth (1976). Spreading of Antarctic Bottom Water and its effects on the floor of the Indian Ocean inferred from bottom-water potential temperature, turbidity, and sea-floor photography. *Marine Geology*, **21**: 171–189.
- Koninklijk Nederlandsch Meteorologisch Instituut (1856). *Maurys’ passatkaart van den Atlantischen Oceaen, vermeerderd met Hollandsche gegevens door den lt. i. z. K. F. R. Andrau*. Koninklijk Nederlandsch Meteorologisch

- Instituut.
- Koninklijk Nederlandsch Meteorologisch Instituut (1857). De Agulhas stroom, afgeleid uit de temperatuur van het zeewater aan de oppervlakte; en de invloed dien deze op de atmosfeer uitoefent. In *Uitkomsten van Wetenschap en Ervaring, aangaande winden en zeestromingen in sommige gedeelten van den oceaan*, Koninklijk Nederlandsch Meteorologisch Instituut, L. E. Bosch en Zoon, Utrecht, pp. 40–50.
- Kortum, G. (1990). An unpublished manuscript of Alexander von Humboldt on the Gulf Stream. In *Ocean Sciences. Their history and relation to man*, editors W. Lenz and M. Deacon. *Deutsche Hydrographische Zeitschrift*, **B(22)**: 122–129.
- Kostianoy, A.G., A.I. Ginzburg, S.A. Lebedev, M. Frankignoulle and B. Delille (2003). Fronts and meso-scale variability in the southern Indian Ocean as inferred from the TOPEX/POSEIDON and ERS-2 altimetry data. *Marine Physics*, **43(5)**: 671–682.
- Kostianoy, A.G., A.I. Ginzburg, M. Frankignoulle and B. Delille (2004). Fronts in the southern Indian Ocean as inferred from satellite sea surface temperature data. *Journal of Marine Systems*, **45(1)**: 55–73.
- Krümmel, O. (1882). Bemerkungen über die Meereströmungen und Temperaturen in der Falklandsee. *Aus den Archiv der Deutschen Seewarte*, **V, 2**, 25 pp. (as shown in Peterson *et al.*, 1993).
- Krümmel, O. (1911). *Handbuch der Ozeanographie. Band II. Die Bewegungsformen des Meeres*. von J. Engelhorn's Nachf., Stuttgart, 766 pp.
- Landman, W.A. and S.J. Mason (1999). Change in the association between Indian Ocean sea-surface temperatures and summer rainfall over South Africa and Namibia. *International Journal of Climatology*, **19(13)**: 1477–1492.
- Largier, J.L. and V.P. Swart (1987). East–west variation in thermocline breakdown on the Agulhas Bank. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **5**: 263–272.
- Largier, J.L., P. Chapman, W.T. Peterson and V.P. Swart (1992). The western Agulhas Bank: circulation, stratification and ecology. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **12**: 319–339.
- Lazarus, B.I. and D. Dowler (1979). Pelagic tunicata off the west and south-west coasts of South Africa, 1964–1965. *Fisheries Bulletin*, **12**: 93–119.
- Lee-Thorp, A.M., M. Rouault and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (1998). Cumulus cloud formation above the Agulhas Current. *South African Journal of Science*, **94(7)**: 351–354.
- Lee-Thorp, A.M., M. Rouault and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (1999). Moisture uptake in the boundary layer above the Agulhas Current: a case study. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **104(C1)**: 1423–1430.
- Liltved, W.R., E. Harley and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (2000). A new subspecies of *Cypraeovula* occurring off the northern part of the Eastern Cape, South Africa, with notes on possible genetic and oceanographic influences on its distribution. Supplement to *Cowries and Their Relatives of Southern Africa*, Seacomber Publications, Cape Town, pp. 225–232.
- Llido, J., J. Sudre, I. Dadou and V. Garçon (2004). Variability of the biological front south of Africa from SeaWiFS and a coupled physical–biological model. *Journal of Marine Systems*, in press.
- Luschi, P., A. Sale, R. Mencacci, G.R. Hughes, J.R.E. Lutjeharms and F. Papi (2003). Current transport of leatherback sea turtles (*Dermochelys coriacea*) in the ocean. *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London (Supplement)*, **270**: S129–S132; DOI 10.1098/rsbl.203.0036.
- Lütgens, R. (1905). Oberflächentemperaturen im südlichen Indischen Ozean 1901 bis 1903. *Annalen der Hydrographie Berlin*, **33(11)**: 498–513.
- Luther, M.E. and J.J. O'Brien (1989). Modelling the variability in the Somali Current. In *mesoscale/Synoptic Coherent Structures in Geophysical Turbulence*, editors J. C. J. Nihoul and B. M. Jamart, Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp. 373–386.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1972). *A Guide to Research Done Concerning Ocean Currents and Water Masses in the South West Indian Ocean*. University of Cape Town, Cape Town, 577 pp.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1972). A quantitative assessment of year-to-year variability in water movement in the Southwest Indian Ocean. *Nature*, **239(91)**: 59–69.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1976). The Agulhas Current system during the Northeast Monsoon Season. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **6(5)**: 665–670.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1977). The need for oceanological research in the South-west Indian Ocean. *South African Journal of Science*, **73(2)**: 40–43.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1980). Fisiese Oseanologie van die Suidwes Indiese Oseaan: 'n bronnelys en oorsig van 1970 tot 1980. *WNNR Verslag, T/SEA 8016*, 82 pp.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1980). The influence of the Agulhas Current. *CSIR Research Report*, **376**, 6 pp.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and D.J. Baker (1980). A statistical analysis of the meso-scale dynamics of the Southern Ocean. *Deep-Sea Research*, **27(2)**: 145–159.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E., G.A.W. Fromme and C.P. Duncan (1980). Large scale motion in the SW Indian Ocean. *CSIR Research Report*, **375**, 9 pp.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1981). Features of the southern Agulhas Current circulation from satellite remote sensing. *South African Journal of Science*, **77(5)**: 231–236.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1981). Satellite studies of the South Atlantic upwelling system. In *Oceanography from Space*, editor J. F. R. Gower, Plenum Press, New York, pp. 195–199.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1981). Spatial scales and intensities of circulation in the ocean areas adjacent to South Africa. *Deep-Sea Research*, **28(11)**: 1289–1302.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1981). Interaction between the Agulhas Current and the Subtropical Convergence. *CSIR Research Report*, **384**, 39 pp.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and H.R. Valentine (1981). Ocean circ-

- lation studies in the vicinity of southern Africa: preliminary results using FGGE drifters and remote sensing. *Advances in Space Research*, **1**(4): 211–223.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E., N.D. Bang and C.P. Duncan (1981). Characteristics of the currents east and south of Madagascar. *Deep-Sea Research*, **28**(9): 879–899.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E., N.D. Bang and H.R. Valentine (1981). Die fisiese oseanologie van die Agulhasbank. I. Vaart 170 van die N. S. Thomas B. Davie. South African Council for Scientific and Industrial Research *CSIR Research Report*, **386**, 38 pp.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1982). Die geskiedkundige ontwikkeling van fisiese navorsing oor die oseane grensend aan Suider-Afrika. *Suid-Afrikaanse Tydskrif vir Natuurwetenskap en Tegnologie*, **1**(1): 42–52.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1983). An Agulhas Current source book. *CSIR Report*, **T/SEA 8306**, 24 pp.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and H. R. Valentine (1983). Die fisiese oseanologie van die Agulhasbank. Deel II: Vaart 185 van die N. S. Thomas B. Davie. *CSIR Research Report*, **557**, 15 pp.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and H.R. Valentine (1984). Southern Ocean thermal fronts south of Africa. *Deep-Sea Research*, **31**(12): 1461–1476.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and R.C. van Ballegooyen (1984). Topographic control in the Agulhas Current system. *Deep-Sea Research*, **31**(11): 1321–1337.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1985). Location of frontal systems between Africa and Antarctica: some preliminary results. *Deep-Sea Research*, **32**(12): 1499–1509.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and N.M. Walters (1985). Ocean colour and thermal fronts south of Africa. In *South African Ocean Colour and Upwelling Experiment*, editor L.V. Shannon, Sea Fisheries Research Institute, Cape Town, pp. 227–237.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and L.H. McQuaid (1986). Changes in the structure of thermal ocean fronts south of Africa over a three-month period. *South African Journal of Science*, **82**(9): 470–476.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E., B.R. Allanson and L. Parker (1986). Frontal zones, chlorophyll and primary production patterns in the surface waters of the Southern Ocean south of Africa. In *Marine Interfaces Ecohydrodynamics*, editor J.C.J. Nihoul, Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp. 105–117.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E., D. Baird and I.T. Hunter (1986). Seoppervlak dryfgedrag aan die Suid-Afrikaanse suidkus in 1979. *South African Journal of Science*, **82**(6): 324–326.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E., R.D. Mey and I.T. Hunter (1986). Cloud lines over the Agulhas Current. *South African Journal of Science*, **82**(11/12): 635–640.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1987). Die Subtropiese Konvergensie en Agulhasretrofleksiervaart (SCARC). *South African Journal of Science*, **83**(8): 454–456.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1987). Meridional heat transport across the Sub-Tropical Convergence by a warm eddy. *Nature*, **331**(6153): 251–253.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1987). The Physical Oceanology of the South West Indian Ocean; a bibliography for 1980 to 1985. *WNNR-verslag*, **T/SEA 8712**, 131 pp.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and F.P. Anderson (1987). The World Ocean Circulation Experiment (WOCE): a South African perspective. *South African Journal of Science*, **83**(1): 10–14.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and A.L. Gordon (1987). Shedding of an Agulhas Ring observed at sea. *Nature*, **325**(7000): 138–140.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and J.M. Meeuwis (1987). The extent and variability of the South East Atlantic upwelling. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **5**: 51–62.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and P.L. Stockton (1987). Kinematics of the upwelling front off Southern Africa. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **5**: 35–49.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1988). Examples of extreme circulation events of the Agulhas Retroflexion. *South African Journal of Science*, **84**(7): 584–586.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1988). On the role of the East Madagascar Current as a source of the Agulhas Current. *South African Journal of Science*, **84**(4): 236–238.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1988). Remote sensing corroboration of retroflexion of the East Madagascar Current. *Deep-Sea Research*, **35**(12): 2045–2050.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and A. Jorge da Silva (1988). The Delagoa Bight eddy. *Deep-Sea Research*, **35**(4): 619–634.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and H.R. Roberts (1988). The Natal Pulse; an extreme transient on the Agulhas Current. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **93**(C1): 631–645.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and H.R. Valentine (1988). Eddies at the Sub-Tropical Convergence south of Africa. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **18**(5): 761–774.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and H.R. Valentine (1988). Evidence for persistent Agulhas rings southwest of Cape Town. *South African Journal of Science*, **84**(9): 781–783.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and H.R. Valentine (1988). On mesoscale ocean eddies at the Agulhas Plateau. *South African Journal of Science*, **84**(3): 194–200.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and R.C. van Ballegooyen (1988). Anomalous upstream retroflexion in the Agulhas Current. *Science*, **240**(4860): 1770–1772.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and R.C. van Ballegooyen (1988). The retroflexion of the Agulhas Current. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **18**(11): 1570–1583.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1989). The role of mesoscale turbulence in the Agulhas Current system. In *Mesoscale/synoptic Coherent Structures in Geophysical Turbulence*, editors J. C. J. Nihoul and B. M. Jamart, Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp. 357–372.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and A.D. Connell (1989). The Natal Pulse and inshore counter currents off the South African east coast. *South African Journal of Science*, **85**(8): 533–535.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E., R. Catzel and H.R. Valentine (1989). Eddies and other border phenomena of the Agulhas Current. *Continental Shelf Research*, **9**(7): 597–616.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E., M.L. Gründlingh and R.A. Carter (1989). Topographically induced upwelling in the Natal Bight.



- South African Journal of Science*, **85**(5): 310–316.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1990). Temperatuurstruktuur van die oseaanbolaag tussen Kaapstad en Marion-eiland. *South African Journal of Antarctic Research*, **20**(1): 21–32.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1991). The temperature/salinity relationships of the South West Indian Ocean. *South African Geographer*, **18**(1/2): 15–31.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1991). Twintig jaar fisiese oseanologie in Suid-Afrika: 'n persoonlike beskouing. *South African Journal for Marine Research*, **10**: 305–320.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and P.L. Stockton (1991). Aspects of the upwelling regime between Cape Point and Cape Agulhas. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **10**: 91–102.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E., J. Olivier and E. Lourens (1991). Surface fronts of False Bay and vicinity. *Transactions of the Royal Society of South Africa*, **47**(415): 433–445.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E., F.A. Shillington and C.M. Duncombe Rae (1991). Observations of extreme upwelling filaments in the South East Atlantic Ocean. *Science*, **253**(5021): 774–776.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E., D.J. Webb and B.A. de Cuevas (1991). Applying the Fine Resolution Antarctic Model (FRAM) to the ocean circulation around southern Africa. *South African Journal of Science*, **87**(8): 346–349.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1992). Hoe gaan dit met die fisiese oseanologie in Suid-Afrika? *South African Journal of Science*, **88**(2): 73.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1992). The Physical Oceanology of the South West Indian Ocean; a bibliography from 1986 to 1990. *CSIR Research Report*, **707**, 95 pp.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E., W.P.M. de Ruijter and R.G. Peterson (1992). Interbasin exchange and the Agulhas retroflection; the development of some oceanographic concepts. *Deep-Sea Research*, **39**(10): 1791–1807.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E., S.J. Weeks, R.D. [sic] van Ballegooyen and F.A. Shillington (1992). Shedding of an eddy from the seaward front of the Agulhas Current. *South African Journal of Science*, **88**(8): 430–433.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E., C.-T. Liu, W.-S. Chuan and C.-Z. Shyu (1993). On some similarities between the oceanic circulations off southern Africa and off Taiwan. *South African Journal of Science*, **89**(8): 367–371.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E., M.I. Lucas, R. Perissinotto, R.C. van Ballegooyen and M. Rouault (1994). Oceanic processes at the Subtropical Convergence: report of research cruise SAAMES III. *South African Journal of Science*, **90**(7): 367–370.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and C.P. Matthysen (1995). A recurrent eddy in the upwelling front off Cape Town. *South African Journal of Science*, **91**(7): 355–357.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and D.J. Webb (1995). Modelling the Agulhas Current system with FRAM (*Fine Resolution Antarctic Model*). *Deep-Sea Research I*, **42**(4): 523–551.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1996). The exchange of water between the South Indian and the South Atlantic. In *The South Atlantic: Present and Past Circulation*, editors G. Wefer, W.H. Berger, G. Siedler and D. Webb, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, pp. 125–162.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and J. Cooper (1996). Interbasin leakage through Agulhas Current filaments. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **43**(2): 213–238.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and W.P.M. de Ruijter (1996). The influence of the Agulhas Current on the adjacent coastal zone: possible impacts of climate change. *Journal of Marine Systems*, **7**(2–4): 321–336.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E., D.J. Webb, B.A. de Cuevas and S.R. Thompson (1996). Large-scale modelling of the South-East Atlantic upwelling system. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **16**: 205–225.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and L.V. Shannon (1997). A century of physical oceanography in South Africa; in search of the legacy of John D. Gilchrist. In *A Century of Marine Science in South Africa*, editors A.I.L. Payne and J.R.E. Lutjeharms, Sea Fisheries Research Institute, Royal Society of South Africa, pp. 17–30 and *Transactions of the Royal Society of South Africa*, **52**(1): 17–30.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E., A.A. Meyer, I.J. Ansorge, G.A. Eagle and M.J. Orren (1996). The nutrient characteristics of the Agulhas Bank. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **17**: 253–274.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E., O. Boebel and T. Rossby (1997). KAPEX: an international experiment to study deep water movement around southern Africa. *South African Journal of Science*, **93**(9): 377–381.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1998). Coastal hydrography. In *A Field Guide to the Eastern and Southern Cape Coast*, editors R. Lubke and I. de Moor, The Wildlife and Environment Society of Southern Africa, Grahamstown, University of Cape Town Press, Rondebosch, pp. 50–61.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (1999). Frontal structures and eddy formation in the greater Agulhas Current system. In *Oceanic Fronts and Related Phenomena*, Konstantin Federov Memorial Symposium, Proceedings, I O C Workshop Report No. 159, UNESCO 2000, pp. 320–325.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and E. Machu (2000). An upwelling cell inshore of the East Madagascar Current. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **47**(12): 2405–2411.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and M. Rouault (2000). Observations of cloud formation above Agulhas Current intrusions in the South-east Atlantic. *South African Journal of Science*, **96**(11/12): 577–580.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E., J. Cooper and M. Roberts (2000). Upwelling at the inshore edge of the Agulhas Current. *Continental Shelf Research*, **20**(7): 737–761.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E., H.R. Valentine and R.C. van Ballegooyen (2000). The hydrography and water masses of the Natal Bight, South Africa. *Continental Shelf Research*, **20**(14): 1907–1939.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E., P.M. Wedepohl and J.M. Meeuwis (2000). On the surface drift of the East Madagascar and the Mozambique Currents. *South African Journal of Science*, **96**(3): 141–147.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E., W.P.M. de Ruijter, H. Ridderinkhof, H. van Aken, C. Veth, P.J. van Leeuwen, S.S. Drijfhout,

- J.H.F. Jansen and G.-J.A. Brummer (2000). MARE and ACSEX: new research programmes on the Agulhas Current system. *South African Journal of Science*, **96**(3): 105–110.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (2001). The Agulhas Current. In *Encyclopedia of Ocean Science*, editors: J. Steele, S. Thorpe and K. Turekian, Academic Press, London, volume 1, pp. 104–113.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and I. Anson (2001). The Agulhas Return Current. *Journal of Marine Systems*, **30**(1/2): 115–138.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E., P.M.S. Monteiro, P.D. Tyson and D. Obura (2001). The oceans around southern Africa and regional effects of global change. *South African Journal of Science*, **97**(3/4): 119–130.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E., O. Boebel, P.C.F. van der Vaart, W.P.M. de Ruijter, T.H. Rossby and H.L. Bryden (2001). Evidence that the Natal Pulse controls the Agulhas Current over its full depth. *Geophysical Research Letters*, **28**(18): 3449–3452.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E., S. Jamalooldien and I.J. Anson (2002). The temporal displacement of ocean fronts south-east of Africa. *South African Journal of Science*, **98**(5/6): 304–306.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and C.S. Fillis (2003). Intrusion of sub-Antarctic water across the Subtropical Convergence south of Africa. *South African Journal of Science*, **99**(3/4): 173–176.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and G. Kortum (2003). On the influence of German marine research on South African physical oceanography since 1890. *Historisch-meereskundliches Jahrbuch*, **9**: 81–100.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E., O. Boebel and T. Rossby (2003). Agulhas cyclones. *Deep-Sea Research II*, **50**(1): 13–34.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E., P. Penven, C. Roy (2003). Modelling the shear-edge eddies of the southern Agulhas Current. *Continental Shelf Research*, **23**(11–13): 1099–1115.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. (2004). The coastal oceans of south-eastern Africa. In *The Sea*, Volume 14, editors: A.R. Robinson, K. Brink, J. Hall, G. Ingram, D. Mackas and D. Townsend, accepted for publication.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and G. Kortum (2004). On the German influence in South African physical oceanography since 1890. In *Ocean Sciences Bridging the Millennia – A spectrum of Historical Accounts*, IOC, in press.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and G. Kortum (2004). German research on the Agulhas Current system between the World Wars; a lost scientific achievement. *Historisch-meereskundliches Jahrbuch*, in preparation.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and A.A. Meyer (2004). On the origin and circulation of bottom water on the Agulhas Bank, South Africa. *Continental Shelf Research*, in preparation.
- Luyten, J.R. and P.F. Smith (1985). Agulhas Current trajectory from new Argos drifter compared with simultaneous shipboard measurements. In *Oceans '85 Ocean Engineering and the Environment*, San Diego, 12–24 November 1985, 2, pp. 1165–1167.
- Luyten, J., A. Spencer, S. Tarbell, K. Luetkemeyer, P. Flament, J. Toole, M. Francis and S. Bennett (1990). Moored current meter, AVHRR, CTD, and drifter data from the Agulhas Current and Retroflexion [sic] region (1985–1987), Vol. XLII. Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution, Technical Report, WHOI-90-30, 100 pp.
- Machu, E., B. Ferret and V. Garçon (1999). Phytoplankton pigment distribution from SeaWiFS data in the subtropical convergence zone south of Africa: a wavelet analysis. *Geophysical Research Letters*, **26**(10): 1469–1472.
- Machu, E. and V. Garçon (2001). Phytoplankton seasonal distribution from SeaWiFS data in the Agulhas Current system. *Journal of Marine Research*, **59**(5): 795–812.
- Machu, E., J.R.E. Lutjeharms, A.M. Webb and H.M. van Aken (2003). First hydrographic evidence of the southeast Madagascar upwelling cell. *Geophysical Research Letters*, **29**(21), 2009, doi:10.1029/2002GL015381.
- Machu, E., A. Biastoch, A. Oschlies, M. Kawamiya, J.R.E. Lutjeharms and V. Garçon (2004). Phytoplankton distribution in the Agulhas system from a coupled physical-biological model. *Deep-Sea Research I*, in revision.
- Magnier, Y. and B. Piton (1973). Les masses d'eau de l'Océan Indien à l'ouest et au nord de Madagascar au début de l'été austral (Novembre–Décembre). *Cahiers ORSTOM.*, **11**: 97–113.
- Majodina, M. and M.R. Jury (1996). Composite winter cyclones south of Africa: evolution during eastward transit over the Agulhas warm pool. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **17**: 241–252.
- Malan, O.G. and E.H. Schumann (1979). Natal shelf circulation revealed by Landsat imagery. *South African Journal of Science*, **75**(3): 136–137.
- Mallory, J.K. (1961). Bathymetric and hydrographic aspects of marine studies off the Natal Coast. In *Marine Studies off the Natal Coast*, Natal Regional Research Committee, CSIR Symposium, **S2**, pp. 31–39.
- Mallory, J.K. (1984). Abnormal waves off the south-east coast of South Africa. *Marine Observer*, **54**(283): 29–38.
- Maltrud, M.E., R.D. Smith, A. J. Semtner and R.C. Malone (1998). Global eddy-resolving ocean simulations driven by 1985–1995 atmospheric winds. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **103**(C13): 30,825–30,853.
- Mantyla, A.W. and J.L. Reid (1995). On the origins of deep and bottom waters of the Indian Ocean. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **100**(C2): 2417–2439.
- Marchesiello, P., B. Barnier and A.P. de Miranda (1998). A sigma-coordinate primitive equation model for studying the circulation in the South Atlantic. Part II: Meridional transport and seasonal variability. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **45**(4–5): 573–608.
- Markham, C.R. (1901). *Major James Rennell and the rise of modern English geography*. Cassell and Company, London, 232 pp.
- Martin, A.K. (1981). Evolution of the Agulhas Current and its palaeo-ecological implications. *South African Journal of Science*, **77**(12): 547–554.
- Martin, A.K. (1981). The influence of the Agulhas Current

- on the physiographic development of the northernmost Natal Valley (S.W. Indian Ocean). *Marine Geology*, **39**: 259–276.
- Martin, A.K. and B.W. Flemming (1988). Physiography, structure and geological evolution of the Natal continental shelf. In *Coastal Ocean Studies off Natal, South Africa*, editor E.H. Schumann, Lecture Notes on Coastal and Estuarine Studies 26, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, pp. 11–46.
- Martin, J., P. Guibout, M. Crepon and J.-C. Lizaray (1965). Circulation superficielle dans l’océan Indien. Résultats de mesures faites à électrodes remorquées G.E.K. entre 1955–1963. *Cahiers Océanographie*, **17**, suppl. 3, 221–241.
- Mason, S.J. (1990). Temporal variability of sea surface temperatures around Southern Africa: a possible forcing mechanism for the 18-year rainfall oscillation. *South African Journal of Science*, **86**(5/6): 243–252.
- Mason, S.J. and P.D. Tyson (1992). The modulation of sea surface temperature and rainfall associations over southern Africa with solar activity and the quasi-biennial oscillation. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **97**(D5): 5847–5856.
- Mason, S.J., J.A. Lindesay and P.D. Tyson (1994). Simulating drought in southern Africa using sea-surface temperature-variations. *Water SA*, **20**(1): 15–22.
- Mason, S.J. (1995). Sea-surface temperature – South African rainfall associations, 1910–1989. *International Journal of Climatology*, **15**(2): 119–135.
- Matano, R.P. and S.G.H. Philander (1993). Heat and mass balances of the South Atlantic Ocean calculated from a numerical model. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **98**(C1): 977–984.
- Matano, R.P. (1996). A numerical study of the Agulhas retroflexion: the role of bottom topography. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **26**(10): 2267–2279.
- Matano, R.P., C.G. Simionato, W.P.(M.) de Ruijter, P.J. van Leeuwen [sic], P.T. Strub, D.B. Chelton and M.G. Schlax (1998). Seasonal variability in the Agulhas Retroflexion region. *Geophysical Research Letters*, **25**(23): 4361–4364.
- Matano, R.P., C.G. Simionato and P.T. Strub (1999). Modelling the wind driven variability of the South Indian Ocean. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **29**(2): 217–230.
- Matano, R.P., E.J. Beier, P.T. Strub and R. Tokmakian (2002). Large-scale forcing of the Agulhas variability: the seasonal cycle. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **32**(4): 1228–1241.
- Matano, R.P. and E.J. Beier (2003). A kinematic analysis of the Indian/Atlantic interocean exchange. *Deep-Sea Research II*, **50**(1): 229–249.
- Maury, M.F. (1855). *The Physical Geography of the Sea*. Harper & Brothers, New York, 274 pp., 12 plates.
- Maury, M.F. (edited by J. Leighly, 1963). *The physical geography of the sea; and its meteorology*. The Belknap Press of Harvard University Press, Cambridge, MA, 432 pp., 10 plates.
- McCartney, M.S. and M.E. Woodgate-Jones (1991). A deep-reaching anticyclonic eddy in the subtropical gyre of the eastern South Atlantic. *Deep-Sea Research*, **38** (Supplement 1): s411–s443.
- McCarthy, M.S. and L.D. Talley (1999). Three-dimensional isoneutral potential vorticity structure in the Indian Ocean. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **104**(C6): 13,251–13,267.
- McDonagh, E.L. and K.J. Heywood (1999). The origin of an anomalous ring in the Southeast Atlantic. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **29**(8): 2025–2064.
- McDonagh, E.L., K.J. Heywood and M.P. Meredith (1999). On the structure, paths and fluxes associated with Agulhas rings. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **104**(C9): 21,007–21,020.
- Menaché, M. (1963). Première campagne océanographique du “Commandant Robert Giraud” dans le Canal de Mozambique 11 Octobre – 28 Novembre 1957. *Cahiers Océanographiques*, **15**(4): 224–235.
- Mercier, H., M. Arhan and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (2003). Upper-layer circulation in the eastern Equatorial and South Atlantic Oceans in January–March 1995. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **50**(7): 863–887.
- Merz, A. (1925). Die Deutsche Atlantische Expedition auf dem Vermessungs- und Forschungsschiff “Meteor”. *Sitzungsberichten der Physikalisch-Matematischen Klasse der Preussischen Akademie der Wissenschaften*, **31**, pp. 562–586.
- Metzl, N., B. Moore and A. Poisson (1990). Resolving the intermediate and deep convective flows in the Indian Ocean by using temperature, salinity, oxygen and phosphate data: the interplay of biogeochemical and geophysical tracers. *Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology*, **89**(1–2): 81–111.
- Mey, R.D., N.D. Walker and M.R. Jury (1990). Surface heat fluxes and marine boundary layer modification in the Agulhas retroflexion region. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **95**(C9): 15,997–16,015.
- Meyer, A.A., J.R.E. Lutjeharms and S. de Villiers (2002). The nutrient characteristics of the Natal Bight, South Africa. *Journal of Marine Systems*, **35**(1–2): 11–37.
- Michaelis, G. (1923). Die Wasserbewegung an der Oberfläche des Indischen Ozeans im Januar und Juli. *Veröffentlichungen des Instituts für Meereskunde an der Universität Berlin*, n.f. **A8**(16): 32 pp.
- Minster, J.-F. and M.C. Gennero (1995). High-frequency variability of western boundary currents using ERS 1 three-day repeat altimeter data. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **100**(C11): 22,603–22,612.
- Möller, L. (1929). Die Zirkulation des Indischen Ozeans; auf Grund von Temperatur- und Salzgehaltstiefenmessungen und Oberflächenstrombeobachtungen. *Veröffentlichungen des Instituts für Meereskunde an der Universität Berlin*, n.f. **A21**: 48 pp.
- Möller, L. (1933). Zur Frage der Tiefenzirkulation im Indischen Ozean. *Annalen des Hydrographie Berlin*, **61**(8,9): 233–236.

- Morrow, R., F. Birol, D. Griffen and J. Sudre (2004). Divergent pathways of cyclonic and anti-cyclonic eddies. *Geophysical Research Letters*, to be submitted.
- Mühry, A. (1864). Die Meeresströmungen an der Südspitze Afrikas. *Petermanns Geographische Mitteilungen*, **10**: 34–35.
- Naeije, M.C., K.F. Wakker, R. Scharoo and B.C.C. Ambrosius (1992). Observation of mesoscale ocean currents from GEOSAT altimeter data. *ISPRS Journal of Photogrammetry and Remote Sensing*, **47**: 347–368.
- Naeije, M.C., E. Wisse, R. Scharoo and K.F. Wakker (1994). Ocean dynamics from the ERS-1 35-day repeat mission. *Proceedings Second ERS-1 Symposium – Space at the Service of our Environment*, **ESA SP-361**, pp. 501–506.
- Nafpaktitis, B.G. (1978). Systematics and distribution of lanternfishes of the genera *Lobianchia* – and *Diaphus* (*Myctophidae*) in the Indian Ocean. *Scientific Bulletin, Natural History Museum, Los Angeles*, **30**: 1–91.
- Natal Regional Research Committee (1961). *Marine studies off the Natal coast*. Council for Scientific and Industrial Research, CSIR Symposium **S2**, 134 pp.
- Naval Oceanographic Office (1977). *Surface Currents. Southeast South Atlantic Ocean*. U.S. Naval Oceanographic Office, Special Publication 1401–SA4.
- Naval Oceanographic Office (1977). *Surface Currents. Southwest Indian Ocean*. U.S. Naval Oceanographic Office, Special Publication. 1404–IN6.
- Naval Oceanographic Office (1977). *Surface Currents. West Central Indian Ocean Including Mozambique Channel*. U.S. Naval Oceanographic Office, Special Publication 1404–IN3.
- Nehring, D. (editor) (1984). The oceanological conditions in the western part of the Mozambique Channel in February–March 1980. *Geodätische und geophysikalische Veröffentlichungen*, **4(9)**: 163 pp.
- Nehring, D., E. Hagen, A. Jorge da Silva, R. Schemainda, G. Wolf, N. Michelsen, W. Kaiser, L. Postel, F. Gosselck, U. Brenning, E. Kuhner, G. Arlt, H. Siegel, L. Gohs, G. Bublitz (1987). Results of oceanological studies in the Mozambique Channel in February–March 1980. *Beiträge zur Meereskunde*, **56**: 51–63.
- New, A.L., K. Stansfield, D. Smyth-Wright, D.A. Smeed, A.L. Evans and S.G. Alderson (2004). Physical and biochemical aspects of the flow across the Mascarene Plateau in the Indian Ocean. *Philosophical Transactions*, submitted.
- Nof, D. (2000). Does the wind control the import and export of the South Atlantic? *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **30(11)**: 2650–2667.
- Olbers, D. (editor) (1992). *Hydrographic Atlas of the Southern Ocean*. Alfred-Wegener-Institut für Polar- und Meeresforschung, Bremerhaven, xvii + 82 pp. + plates.
- Oloff, W.D. (1973). Chemistry and productivity at Richard's Bay. *NPRL Oceanography Division, Contract Report, CFIS 37B*, Durban, South Africa.
- Olivar, M.P. and L.E. Beckley (1994). Influence of the Agulhas Current on the distribution of Lanternfish larvae off the south-east coast of Africa. *Journal of Plankton Research*, **16(12)**: 1759–1780.
- Olson, D.B. and R.H. Evans (1986). Rings of the Agulhas Current. *Deep-Sea Research*, **33(1)**: 27–42.
- Olson, D.B., R.A. Fine and A.L. Gordon (1992). Convective modifications of water masses in the Agulhas. *Deep-Sea Research*, **39** (Supplement 1): s163–s181.
- Orren, M.J. (1963). Hydrological observations in the South West Indian Ocean. *Investigational Reports of the Division of Sea Fisheries* (of South Africa), **45**: 61 pp.
- Ou, H.W. and W.P.M. de Ruijter (1986). Separation of an inertial boundary current from a curved coastline. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **16(2)**: 280–289.
- Paech, H. (1926). Die Oberflächenströmungen um Madagascar in ihrem Jährlichen Gang. *Veröffentlichungen des Instituts für Meereskunde an der Universität Berlin*, n.f. **A(16)**: 39 pp.
- Park, Y.-H., L. Gambéroni and E. Charriaud (1991). Frontal structure and transport of the Antarctic Circumpolar Current in the South Indian Ocean sector, 40–80° E. *Marine Chemistry*, **35(1)**: 45–62.
- Park, Y.-H., L. Gambéroni and E. Charriaud (1993). Frontal structure, water masses, and circulation in the Crozet Basin. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **98(C7)**: 12,361–12,385.
- Park, Y.-H. and L. Gambéroni (1995). Large-scale circulation and its variability in the South Indian Ocean from TOPEX/POSEIDON altimetry. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **100(C12)**: 24,911–24,929.
- Park, Y.-H. and L. Gambéroni (1997). Cross-frontal exchanges of Antarctic Intermediate Water and Antarctic Bottom Water in the Crozet Basin. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **44(5)**: 963–986.
- Park, Y.-H., E. Charriaud and M. Fieux (1998). Thermohaline structure of the Antarctic Surface Water/Winter Water in the Indian sector of the Southern Ocean. *Journal of Marine Systems*, **17(1–4)**: 5–23.
- Park, Y.-H., E. Charriaud, P. Craneguy and A. Kartavtseff (2001). Fronts, transport, and Weddell Gyre at 30° E between Africa and Antarctica. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **106(C2)**: 2857–2879.
- Patterson, S.L. (1985). Surface circulation and kinetic energy distribution in the southern hemisphere oceans from FGGE drifting buoys. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **15(7)**: 865–884.
- Pearce, A.F. (1975). Ode to an eddy. *Nature*, **258(5535)**: 486.
- Pearce, A.F. (1977). The shelf circulation off the east coast of South Africa. *Council for Scientific and Industrial Research, CSIR Research Report*, **361**, 220 pp.
- Pearce, A.F. (1977). Some features of the upper 500m of the Agulhas Current. *Journal of Marine Research*, **35(4)**: 731–753.
- Pearce, A.F. (1978). Seasonal variations of temperature and salinity on the northern Natal continental shelf. *South African Geographical Journal*, **60(2)**: 135–143.
- Pearce, A.F., E.H. Schumann and G.S.H. Lundie (1978). Features of the shelf circulation off the Natal coast. *South*



- African Journal of Science*, **74**(9): 328–331.
- Pearce, A.F. (1980). Early observations and historical notes on the Agulhas Current circulation. *Transactions of the Royal Society of South Africa*, **44**(2): 205–212.
- Pearce, A.F. and M.L. Gründlingh (1982). Is there a seasonal variation in the Agulhas Current? *Journal of Marine Research*, **40**(1): 177–184.
- Pearce, A.F. (1983). Adrift in the Agulhas Return Current. *Deep-Sea Research*, **30**(3): 343–347.
- Peeters, F.J.C., R. Acheson, G.-J.A. Brummer, W.P.M. de Ruijter, G.M. Ganssen, R.R. Schneider, E. Ufkes and D. Kroon (2004). Vigorous exchange between Indian and Atlantic Ocean at the end of the last five glacial periods. *Nature*, accepted.
- Penduff, T., B. Barnier, K. Beranger and T. Verron (2001). Comparison of near-surface mean and eddy flows from two numerical models of the South Atlantic Ocean. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **106**(C8): 16,857–16,867.
- Penduff, T., P. Brasseur, C.-E. Testut, B. Barnier and J. Verron (2002). A four-year eddy-permitting assimilation of sea-surface temperature and altimetric data in the South Atlantic Ocean. *Journal of Marine Research*, **60**(6): 805–833.
- Penven, P., J.R.E. Lutjeharms, P. Marchesiello, S.J. Weeks and C. Roy (2001). Generation of cyclonic eddies by the Agulhas Current in the lee of the Agulhas Bank. *Geophysical Research Letters*, **27**(6): 1055–1058.
- Penven, P., C. Roy, G.B. Brundrit, A. Colin de Verdière, P. Fréon, A.S. Johnson, J.R.E. Lutjeharms and F.A. Shillington (2001). A regional hydrodynamic model of the Southern Benguela. *South African Journal of Science*, **97** (11/12): 472–475.
- Petermann, A. (1850). *Atlas of Physical Geography*. Wm. S. Orr and Co., London, 124 pp., 15 plates.
- Petermann, A. (1865). Karte der Arktischen und Antarktischen Regimen zur Übersicht des geographischen Standpunktes im Jahre 1865. *Petermanns Mitteilungen*, Tafel 5.
- Peterson, R.G. and L. Stramma (1991). Upper-level circulation in the South Atlantic Ocean. *Progress in Oceanography*, **26**: 1–75.
- Peterson, R.G., L. Stramma and G. Kortum (1996). Early concepts and charts of ocean circulation. *Progress in Oceanography*, **37**(1): 1–115.
- Pichevin, T., D. Nof and J. Lutjeharms (1999). Why are there Agulhas rings? *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **29**(4): 693–707.
- Pillsbury, R.D., J.M. Bottero, G. Pittock, D.C. Root, J. Simpkins and R.E. Still (1994). Benguela Source and Transport Project (BEST): Current measurements off the coast of South Africa. WOCE ACM-4, June 1992–October 1993. *OSU Data Report 157*, Reference 94-3, Corvallis, 69 pp.
- Piola, A.R., H.A. Figueroa and A.A. Bianchi (1987). Some aspects of the surface circulation south of 20°S revealed by First GARP Global Experiment drifters. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **92**(C5): 5101–5114.
- Piton, B. and J.F. Poulain (1974). Resultat des mesures de courant superficiels au GEK effectuées avec le N.O. “Vauban” dans le sud-ouest de l’océan Indien, 1973–74. *ORSTOM Centre de Nosy Bé, Document Scientifique*, **47**, 77 pp.
- Piton, B., J.-H. Pointeau and J.-S. Nigoumbi (1981). Atlas hydrologique du Canal de Mozambique (Océan Indien). *Travaux et Documents de l’ORSTOM*, **132**: 41 pp.
- Piton, B. (1989). Quelques aspects nouveaux sur la circulation superficielle dans le canal de Mozambique (Océan Indien). *Document Scientifique, Centre Brest ORSTOM*, **54**: 31 pp.
- Pollak, M.J. (1958). Frequency distribution of potential temperatures and salinities in the Indian Ocean. *Deep-Sea Research*, **5**(2): 128–133.
- Pollard, R. and G. Griffiths (1993). James Rennell, the father of oceanography. *Ocean Challenge*, **4**(1/2): 24–25.
- Prell, W.L. and W.H. Hutson (1979). Zonal temperature-anomaly maps of Indian Ocean surface waters – modern and ice-age patterns. *Science*, **206**(4417): 454–456.
- Prell, W.L., W.H. Hutson and D.F. Williams (1979). The subtropical convergence and Late Quaternary circulation in the southern Indian Ocean. *Marine Micropaleontology*, **4**: 225–234.
- Prell, W.L., W.H. Hutson, D.F. Williams, A.W.H. Bé, K. Geitzenauer and B. Molino (1980). Surface circulation of the Indian Ocean during the last glacial maximum, approximately 18,000 yr. B.P. *Quaternary Research*, **14**(3): 309–336.
- Preston-Whyte, R.A. (1974). Land breezes and mountain-plain winds over the Natal coast. *South African Geographical Journal*, **56**(1): 27–35.
- Preston-Whyte, R.A. and P.D. Tyson (1988). *The Atmosphere and Weather of Southern Africa*. Oxford University Press, Cape Town, pp. 374.
- Probyn, T.A., B.A. Mitchell-Innes, P.C. Brown, L. Hutchings and R.A. Carter (1994). A review of primary productivity and related processes on the Agulhas Bank. *South African Journal of Science*, **90**(3): 166–173.
- Quartly, G.D. and M.A. Srokosz (1993). Seasonal variations in the region of the Agulhas retroflection: studies with Geosat and FRAM. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **23**(9): 2107–2124.
- Quartly, G.D. and M.A. Srokosz (2002). Satellite observations of the Agulhas Current system. *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London A*, **361**(1802): 51–56.
- Quartly, G.D. and M.A. Srokosz (2002). SST observations of the Agulhas and East Madagascar retroflections by the TRMM Microwave imager. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **32**(5): 1585–1592.
- Quartly, G.D. and M.A. Srokosz (2004). Eddies in the southern Mozambique Channel. *Deep-Sea Research II*, **51**(1): 69–83.
- Quartly, G.D., J.J.H. Buck, M.A. Srokosz and A.C. Coward (2004). Eddies around Madagascar – An end to the retroflection? *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, submitted.
- Ramage, C.S. (1984). Climate of the Indian Ocean north of

- 35°S. In *Climates of the Oceans*, editor H. van Loon, World Survey of Climatology, Volume 15, Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp. 693–697.
- Randall, R.M., B.M. Randall and D. Baird (1981). Speed of movement of Jackass penguins over long distances and their possible use of ocean currents. *South African Journal of Science*, **77**(9): 420–421.
- Rau, A.J., J. Rogers, J.R.E. Lutjeharms, J. Giraudeau, J.A. Lee-Thorp, M.-T. Chen and C. Waelbroeck (2002). A 450-kyr record of hydrographical conditions on the western Agulhas Bank slope, south of Africa. *Marine Geology*, **180**(1–4): 183–201.
- Read, J.F. and R.T. Pollard (1993). Structure and transport of the Antarctic Circumpolar Current and Agulhas Return Current at 40°E. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **98**(C7): 12,281–12,295.
- Read, J.F. and R.T. Pollard (1999). Deep inflow into the Mozambique Basin. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **104**(C2): 3075–3090.
- Read, J.F., M.I. Lucas, S.E. Holley and R.T. Pollard (2000). Phytoplankton, nutrients and hydrography in the frontal zone between the Southwest Indian Subtropical gyre and the Southern Ocean. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **47**(12): 2341–2368.
- Reason, C.J.C., R.J. Allan and J.A. Lindesay (1996). Dynamical response of the oceanic circulation and temperature to interdecadal variability in the surface winds over the Indian Ocean. *Journal of Climate*, **9**(1): 97–114.
- Reason, C.J.C., R.J. Allan and J.A. Lindesay (1996). Evidence for the influence of remote forcing on interdecadal variability in the southern Indian Ocean. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **101**(C5): 11,867–11,882.
- Reason, C.J.C. (1998). Warm and cold events in the southeast Atlantic/southwest Indian Ocean region and potential impacts on circulation and rainfall over southern Africa. *Meteorology and Atmospheric Physics*, **69**(1–2): 49–65.
- Reason, C.J.C. and C.R. Godfred-Spenning (1998). SST variability in the South Indian Ocean and associated circulation and rainfall patterns over southern Africa. *Meteorology and Atmospheric Physics*, **66**(3–4): 243–258.
- Reason, C.J.C. and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (1998). Variability of the South Indian Ocean and implications for southern African rainfall. *South African Journal of Science*, **94**(3): 115–123.
- Reason, C.J.C., C. R. Godfred-Spenning, R.J. Allan and J.A. Lindesay (1998). Air–sea interaction mechanisms and low frequency climate variability in the South Indian Ocean region. *International Journal of Climatology*, **18**(4): 391–405.
- Reason, C.J.C. and H. Mulenga (1999). Relationships between South African rainfall and SST anomalies in the Southwest Indian Ocean. *International Journal of Climatology*, **19**(15): 1651–1673.
- Reason, C.J.C. (2000). Multidecadal climate variability in the subtropics/midlatitudes of the Southern Hemisphere oceans. *Tellus*, **52**(A): 203–223.
- Reason, C.J.C. and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (2000). Modelling multidecadal variability in the South Indian Ocean region: local forcing or a near-global mode? *South African Journal of Science*, **96**(3): 127–135.
- Reason, C.J.C. (2001). Evidence for the influence of the Agulhas Current on regional atmospheric circulation patterns. *Journal of Climate*, **14**(6): 2769–2778.
- Reason, C.J.C. (2001). Subtropical Indian Ocean SST dipole events and southern African rainfall. *Geophysical Research Letters*, **28**(11): 2225–2227.
- Reason, C.J.C. (2002). The wet winter of 2001 over the south-western Cape, South Africa: potential large-scale influences. *South African Journal of Science*, **98**(5/6): 307–310.
- Reason, C.J.C., J.R.E. Lutjeharms, J. Hermes, A. Biastoch and R.E. Roman (2003). Inter-ocean fluxes south of Africa in an eddy-permitting model. *Deep-Sea Research II*, **50**(1): 281–298.
- Reichs-marine Ampt (1909). *Forschungsreise S.M.S. "Planet" 1906–1907*. Reichs-marine Ampt, Berlin, Bände I–V.
- Reid, J.L. (1989). On the total geostrophic circulation of the South Atlantic Ocean: flow patterns, tracers and transports. *Progress in Oceanography*, **23**(3): 149–244.
- Reid, J.R. (1996). On the circulation of the South Atlantic Ocean. In *The South Atlantic: Present and Past Circulation*, editors: G. Wefer, W. H. Berger, G. Siedler and D. Webb, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, pp. 13–44.
- Reid, J.R. (2003). On the total geostrophic circulation of the Indian Ocean: flow patterns, tracers and transports. *Progress in Oceanography*, **56**(1): 137–186.
- Rennell, J. (1778). *Chart of the Bank of Lagullus and southern Coast of Africa*, London.
- Rennell, J. (1832). *An investigation of the currents of the Atlantic Ocean, and of those which prevail between the Indian Ocean and the Atlantic*. J.G. and F. Rivington, London, editor J. Purdy, viii + 359 pp. + 2 folding maps.
- Richardson, P.L., M.E. Pacheco and C.M. Wooding (2002). KAPEX RAFOS float data report 1997–1997. Part B. FLOAT trajectories at 750 m in the Benguela Current. Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution Technical Report, in preparation.
- Richardson, P.L. and S.L. Garzoli (2003). Characteristics of intermediate water flows in the Benguela Current as measured with RAFOS floats. *Deep-Sea Research II*, **50**(1): 87–118.
- Richardson, P.L., J.R.E. Lutjeharms and O. Boebel (2003). Introduction to the “Inter-ocean exchange around southern Africa”. *Deep-Sea Research II*, **50**(1): 1–12.
- Ridderinkhof, H. (2000). RV Pelagia cruise report: Cruise 64PE156, Project ACSEX-1. NIOZ, Texel, pp. 25 + appendix.
- Ridderinkhof, H., J.R.E. Lutjeharms and W.P.M. de Ruijter (2001). A research cruise to investigate the Mozambique Current. *South African Journal of Science*, **97**(11/12): 461–464.
- Ridderinkhof, H. and W.P.M. de Ruijter (2003). Moored current observations in the Mozambique Channel. *Deep-*

- Sea Research II*, 50(12–13): 1933–1955.
- Rintoul, S. R. (1991). South Atlantic interbasin exchange. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **96**(C2): 2675–2692.
- Rochford, D. (1964). Salinity maximum in the upper 1000 waters of the north Indian Ocean. *Australian Journal of Marine and Freshwater Research*, **15**(1): 1–24.
- Roel, B. A., J. Hewitson, S. Kerstan and I. Hampton (1994). The role of the Agulhas Bank in the life cycle of pelagic fish. *South African Journal of Science*, **90**(3): 185–196.
- Römer, E. (1939). The counter current off the south and southeast African coast. *Hydrographic Review*, **16**: 88–91.
- Rossouw, J. (1984). Review of existing wave data, wave climate and design waves for South African and South West African (Namibian) coastal waters. *National Research Institute for Oceanology, CSIR Report, T/SEA 8401*, 66 pp. + tables + figures.
- Rouault, M. and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (1994). Air–sea interaction in the marine atmosphere boundary layer: a new South African research venture. *South African Journal of Science*, **90**(1): 11–12.
- Rouault, M., A. Lee-Thorp, I. Ansoerge and J. Lutjeharms (1995). Agulhas Current Air–Sea Interaction Experiment. *South African Journal of Science*, **91**(10): 493–496.
- Rouault, M. and A.M. Lee-Thorp (1996). Fine-time resolution measurements of atmospheric boundary layer properties between Cape Town and Marion Island. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **17**: 281–296.
- Rouault, M., A.M. Lee-Thorp, I.J. Ansoerge and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (1997). Data report on the Agulhas Current Air–Sea Exchange Experiment, April–May 1995. University of Cape Town, Department of Oceanography, Report **DO-97-1**, 160 pp.
- Rouault, M., J.R.E. Lutjeharms, A.M. Lee-Thorp, M.R. Jury and M. Majodina (1999). Air–sea Interaction over the Agulhas Current and Implication for South African Weather. Report to the Water Research Commission, Department of Oceanography, University of Cape Town, *WRC Report No 374/1/99*, 104 pp.
- Rouault, M. and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (2000). Air–sea exchange over an Agulhas eddy at the Subtropical Convergence. *The Global Atmosphere and Ocean System*, **7**(2): 125–150.
- Rouault, M., A.M. Lee-Thorp and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (2000). The atmospheric boundary layer above the Agulhas Current during alongcurrent winds. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **30**(1): 40–50.
- Rouault, M., I. Jobard, S.A. White and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (2001). Studying rainfall events over South Africa and adjacent oceans using the TRMM satellite. *South African Journal of Science*, **97**(11/12): 455–460.
- Rouault, M., S.A. White, C.J.C. Reason and J.R.E. Lutjeharms and I. Jobard (2002). Ocean–atmosphere interaction in the Agulhas Current and a South African extreme weather event. *Weather and Forecasting*, **17**(4): 655–669.
- Rouault, M., C.J.C. Reason, J.R.E. Lutjeharms and A. Beliaars (2003). Underestimation of latent and sensible heat fluxes above the Agulhas Current in NCEP and ECMWF analyses. *Journal of Climate*, **16**(2): 776–782.
- Rouault, M., C. J. Reason, J.R.E. Lutjeharms, H. Mulenga, Y. Richard, N. Fauchereau and S. Trzaska (2003). Role of the oceans in South Africa’s rainfall. Water Research Commission, *WRC Report No. 953/1/03*, 55 pp.
- Rouault, M. and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (2003). Estimation of sea-surface temperature around southern Africa from satellite-derived microwave observations. *South African Journal of Science*, **99**(9/10): 489–494.
- Roubicek, A.J., S.L. Garzoli, P.L. Richardson, C.M. Duncombe Rae and D.M. Fratantoni (1998). Benguela Current Experiment: RV *Seward Johnson* SJ 9705, Cape Town September 4, 1997–Recife September 30, 1997. *NOAA Data Report ERL AOML-33*.
- Ryan, P.G. (1988). The characteristics and distribution of plastic particles at the sea-surface off the southwestern Cape Province, South Africa. *Marine Environmental Research*, **25**(4): 249–273.
- Sætre, R. and R. de Paula e Silva (1979). The marine fish resources of Mozambique. *Reports on surveys with the R/V Dr Fridtjof Nansen*, Serviço de Investigações Pesqueiras, Maputo, Institute of Marine Research, Bergen, 179 pp.
- Sætre, R. and A. Jorge da Silva (1982). Water masses and circulation of the Mozambique Channel. *Revista de Investigação Pesqueira*, **3**, Instituto de Desenvolvimento Pesqueiro, Maputo, República Popular de Moçambique, 83 pp.
- Sætre, R. and A. Jorge da Silva (1984). The circulation of the Mozambique Channel. *Deep-Sea Research*, **31**(5): 485–508.
- Sætre, R. (1985). Surface currents in the Mozambique Channel. *Deep-Sea Research*, **32**(12): 1457–1467.
- Schell, I.I. (1968). On the relation between the winds off southwest Africa and the Benguela Current and the Agulhas Current penetration in the South Atlantic. *Deutsche Hydrographische Zeitschrift*, **21**(3): 109–117.
- Schemainda, R. and E. Hagen (1983). On steady state intermediate vertical currents induced by the Mozambique Current. *Océanographie Tropicale*, **18**(1): 81–88.
- Schleyer, M.H. (1985). Chaetognaths as indicators of water masses in the Agulhas Current system. *Investigations Reports, Oceanographic Research Institute, Durban*, **61**: 1–20.
- Schlitzer, R. (1996). Mass and heat transport in the South Atlantic derived from historical hydrographic data. In *The South Atlantic: present and past circulation*, editors G. Wefer, W.H. Berger, G. Siedler and D.J. Webb, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, pp. 289–304.
- Schmid, C., O. Boebel, W. Zenk, J.R.E. Lutjeharms, S. Garzoli, P.L. Richardson and C. Barron (2003). Early evolution of an Agulhas ring. *Deep-Sea Research II*, **50**(1): 141–166.
- Schmitz, W.J. and J.R. Luyten (1991). Spectral time scales for mid-latitude eddies. *Journal of Marine Research*, **49**(1): 75–107.

- Schmitz, W.J. (1996). On the eddy field in the Agulhas Retroflection, with some global considerations. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **101**(C7): 16,259–16,271.
- Schmitz, W.J. (1996). On the World Ocean Circulation: Volume II. The Pacific and Indian Oceans/A Global Update. Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution, Technical Report WHOI-96-08, 237 pp.
- Schott, F., M. Fieux, J. Kindle, J. Swallow and R. Zantopp (1988). The boundary currents east and north of Madagascar. Part II. Direct measurements and model comparisons. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **93**(C5): 4963–4974.
- Schott, G. (1926). Die Tiefenwasserbewegung des Indischen Ozeans. *Annalen der Hydrographie, Berlin*, **54**(2): 417–431.
- Schott, G. (1928). Die Verteilung des Salzgehaltes im Oberflächenwasser der Ozeane. *Annalen der Hydrographie, Berlin*, **5**: 145–166.
- Schott, G. (1935). *Geographie des Indischen und Stillen Ozeans*. C. Boysen, 413 pp., 37 plates.
- Schott, G. (1944). *Geographie des Atlantischen Ozeans*. C. Boysen, 438 pp., 38 plates.
- Schouten, M.W., W.P.M. de Ruijter, P.J. van Leeuwen and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (2000). Translation, decay and splitting of Agulhas rings in the south-eastern Atlantic ocean. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **105**(C9): 21,913–21,925.
- Schouten, M.W., W.P.M. de Ruijter and P.J. van Leeuwen (2002). Upstream control of Agulhas ring shedding. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **107**(C8): 10.1029/2001JC000804.
- Schouten, M.W., W.P.M. de Ruijter, P.J. van Leeuwen and H. Dijkstra (2002). A teleconnection between the equatorial and southern Indian Ocean. *Geophysical Research Letters*, **29**(16), 1812, doi: 10.1029/2001GL014542.
- Schouten, M.W., W.P.M. de Ruijter, P.J. van Leeuwen and H. Ridderinkhof (2003). Eddies and variability in the Mozambique Channel. *Deep-Sea Research II*, **50**(12–13): 1987–2003.
- Schouten, M.W., W.P.M. de Ruijter, P.J. van Leeuwen and H.A. Dijkstra (2003). An oceanic connection between Indian Ocean equatorial winds and eddy variability around Southern Africa. *Deep-Sea Research I*, resubmitted.
- Schumann, E.H. (1976). Changes in energy of surface gravity waves in the Agulhas Current. *Deep-Sea Research*, **23**(6): 509–518.
- Schumann, E.H. (1981). Low frequency fluctuations off the Natal coast. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **86**(C7): 6499–6508.
- Schumann, E.H. (1982). Inshore circulation of the Agulhas Current off Natal. *Journal of Marine Research*, **40**(1): 43–55.
- Schumann, E.H. and L.-A. Perrins (1982). Tidal and inertial currents around South Africa. In *Proceedings of the Eighteenth International Coastal Engineering Conference*, American Society of Civil Engineers, Cape Town, South Africa, Nov. 14–19, 1982, pp. 2562–2580.
- Schumann, E.H., L.-A. Perrins and I.T. Hunter (1982). Upwelling along the south coast of the Cape Province, South Africa. *South African Journal of Science*, **78**(6): 238–242.
- Schumann, E.H. (1983). Long period coastal trapped waves off the southeast coast of Southern Africa. *Continental Shelf Research*, **2**(2/3): 97–107.
- Schumann, E.H. and L.J. Beekman (1984). Ocean temperature structures on the Agulhas Bank. *Transactions of the Royal Society of South Africa*, **34**(2): 191–203.
- Schumann, E.H. (1986). The bottom boundary layer inshore of the Agulhas Current off Natal in August 1975. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **4**: 93–102.
- Schumann, E.H. (1987). The coastal ocean off the east coast of South Africa. *Transactions of the Royal Society of South Africa*, **46**(3): 215–229.
- Schumann, E.H. (editor) (1988). *Coastal Ocean Studies off Natal, South Africa*, Lecture Notes on Coastal and Estuarine Studies 26, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 271 pp.
- Schumann, E.H. (1988). Physical oceanography off Natal. In *Coastal Ocean Studies off Natal, South Africa*, editor E.H. Schumann, Lecture Notes on Coastal and Estuarine Studies 26, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, pp. 101–130.
- Schumann, E.H. and I. Li [sic] van Heerden (1988). Observations of Agulhas Current frontal features south of Africa, October 1983. *Deep-Sea Research*, **35**(8): 1355–1362.
- Schumann, E.H., G.J.B. Ross and W.S. Goschen (1988). Cold water events in Algoa Bay and along the Cape south coast, South Africa, in March/April 1987. *South African Journal of Science*, **84**(7): 579–584.
- Schumann, E.H. (1989). The propagation of air pressure and wind systems along the South African coast. *South African Journal of Science*, **85**(6): 382–385.
- Schumann, E.H. and K.H. Brink (1990). Coastal-trapped waves off the coast of South Africa: generation, propagation and current structures. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **20**(8): 1206–1218.
- Schumann, E.H. and J.A. Martin (1991). Climatological aspects of the coastal wind field at Cape Town, Port Elizabeth and Durban. *South African Geographical Journal*, **73**(1): 48–51.
- Schumann, E.H., W.K. Illenberger and W.S. Goschen (1991). Surface winds over Algoa Bay. *South African Journal of Science*, **87**(5): 202–207.
- Schumann, E.H., J.R.E. Lutjeharms, A.J. Boyd, M.L. Gründlingh and G.B. Brundrit (1991). Physical oceanography in South Africa: 1987 to 1990. *South African Journal of Science*, **87**(10): 486–492.
- Schumann, E.H. (1992). Interannual wind variability on the south and east coasts of South Africa. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **97**(D18): 20,397–20,403.
- Schumann, E.H., A.L. Cohen and M.R. Jury (1995). Coastal sea surface temperature variability along the south coast of South Africa and the relationship to regional and global climate. *Journal of Marine Research*, **53**(2): 231–248.
- Schumann, E.H. (1998). The coastal ocean off southeast Africa, including Madagascar. In *The Sea*, Volume 11,



- Chapter 19, editors A.R. Robinson and K.H. Brink, John Wiley & Sons, pp. 557–581.
- Schumann, E.H. (1999). Wind-driven mixed layer and coastal upwelling processes off the south coast of South Africa. *Journal of Marine Research*, **57**(4): 671–691.
- Semtner, A.J. and R.M. Chervin (1988). A simulation of the global ocean circulation with resolved eddies. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **93**(C12): 15,502–15,522.
- Semtner, A.J. and R.M. Chervin (1992). Ocean general circulation from a global eddy-resolving model. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **97**(C4): 5493–5550.
- Shannon, L.V. (1966). Hydrology of the South and West coasts of South Africa. *Investigational Report, Division of Sea Fisheries*, **58**: 1–52.
- Shannon, L.V. (1979). The Cape Nimbus-7 CZCS programme: An overview and preliminary results. *South African Journal of Science*, **75**(12): 564.
- Shannon, L.V. and P. Chapman (1983). Suggested mechanisms for the chronic pollution by oil of beaches east of Cape Agulhas, South Africa. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **1**: 231–244.
- Shannon, L.V., P. Chapman, G.A. Eagle and T.P. McClurg (1983). A comparative study of tar ball distribution and movement in two boundary current regimes: implication for oiling of beaches. *Oil & Petrochemical Pollution*, **1**(4): 243–259.
- Shannon, L.V., S.A. Mostert, N.M. Walters and F.P. Anderson (1983). Chlorophyll concentrations in the southern Benguela Current region as determined by satellite (Nimbus-7 Coastal Zone Colour Scanner). *Journal of Plankton Research*, **5**(4): 565–583.
- Shannon, L.V., P. Schlittenhardt and S.A. Mostert (1984). The NIMBUS 7 CZCS experiment in the Benguela Current region off southern Africa, February 1980. 2. Interpretation of imagery and oceanographic implications. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **89**(D4): 4968–4976.
- Shannon, L.V. (editor) (1985). *South African Ocean Colour and Upwelling Experiment*. Sea Fisheries Research Institute, Cape Town, 270 pp.
- Shannon, L.V. (1985). The Benguela Ecosystem. 1. Evolution of the Benguela, physical features and processes. *Oceanography and Marine Biology, An Annual Review*, **23**: 105–182.
- Shannon, L.V. and D. Hunter (1988). Notes on Antarctic Intermediate Water around Southern Africa. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **6**: 107–117.
- Shannon, L.V., J.R.E. Lutjeharms and J.J. Agenbag (1989). Episodic input of Subantarctic water into the Benguela region. *South African Journal of Science*, **85**(5): 317–332.
- Shannon, L.V., J.R.E. Lutjeharms and G. Nelson (1990). Causative mechanisms for intra-annual and inter-annual variability in the marine environment around Southern Africa. *South African Journal of Science*, **86**(7/8/9/10): 356–373.
- Shannon, L.V., J.J. Agenbag, N.D. Walker and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (1990). A major perturbation in the Agulhas retroflexion area in 1986. *Deep-Sea Research*, **37**(3): 493–512.
- Shannon, L.V. and G. Nelson (1996). The Benguela: large scale features and processes and system variability. In *The South Atlantic: Present and Past Circulation*, editors G. Wefer, W.H. Berger, G. Siedler and D. Webb, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, pp. 163–210.
- Shannon, L.V. (2001). The Benguela Current. In *Encyclopedia of Ocean Science*, editors: J. Steele, S. Thorpe and K. Turekian, Academic Press, London, volume 1, pp. 255–267.
- Shillington, F.A. (1984). Long period edge waves off southern Africa. *Continental Shelf Research*, **3**(4): 343–357.
- Shillington, F.A., W.T. Peterson, L. Hutchings, T.A. Probyn, H.N. Waldron and J.J. Agenbag (1990). A cool upwelling filament off Namibia, southwest Africa: preliminary measurements of physical and biological features. *Deep-Sea Research*, **37**(11): 1753–1772.
- Shillington, F.A. (1998). The Benguela upwelling system off southwestern Africa. In *The Sea*, Volume 11, Chapter 20, editors A.R. Robinson and K.H. Brink, John Wiley & Sons, pp. 583–604.
- Skogen, M.D. (1999). A biophysical model applied to the Benguela upwelling system. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **21**: 235–249.
- Smythe-Wright, D., A.L. Gordon, P. Chapman and M.S. Jones (1996). CFC – 113 shows Brazil eddy crossing the South Atlantic to the Agulhas retroflexion region. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **101**(C1): 885–895.
- Smythe-Wright, D., P. Chapman, C. Duncombe Rae, L.V. Shannon and S.M. Boswell (1998). Characteristics of the South Atlantic subtropical frontal zone between 15°W and 5°E. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **45**(1): 167–192.
- Snaith, H.M. and I.S. Robinson (1996). A study of currents south of Africa using Geosat satellite altimetry. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **101**(C8): 18,141–18,154.
- Sparrow, M.D., K.J. Heywood, J. Brown and D.P. Stevens (1996). Current structure of the south Indian Ocean. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **101**(C3): 6377–6391.
- Stavropoulos, C.C. and C.P. Duncan (1974). A satellite-tracked buoy in the Agulhas Current. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **79**(C18): 2744–2746.
- Stevens, D.P. and S.R. Thompson (1994). The South Atlantic in the Fine-Resolution Antarctic Model. *Annales Geophysicae*, **12**: 826–839.
- Stramma, L. (1992). The South Indian Ocean Current. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **22**(4): 421–430.
- Stramma, L. and R.G. Peterson (1990). The South Atlantic Current. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **20**(6): 846–859.
- Stramma, L. and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (1997). The flow field of the subtropical gyre of the South Indian Ocean. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **102**(C3): 5513–5530.
- Stramma, L. and M. England (1999). On the water masses and mean circulation of the South Atlantic Ocean. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **104**(C9): 20,863–20,883.
- Stramma, L. (2001). Current systems of the Atlantic Ocean. In *Encyclopedia of Ocean Science*, editors: J. Steele, S.

- Thorpe and K. Turekian, Academic Press, London, pp. 589–598.
- Srokosz, M.A., G.D. Quartly and J.J.H. Buck (2004). A possible plankton wave in the Indian Ocean. *Geophysical Research Letters*, **31**, L13301, doi: 10.1029/2004GLO19738.
- Strub, P.T., F.A. Shillington, C. James and S.J. Weeks (1998). Satellite comparison of the seasonal circulation in the Benguela and California Current systems. In *Benguela Dynamics*, editors S.C. Pillar, C.L. Moloney, A.I.L. Payne and F.A. Shillington, *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **19**: 99–112.
- Stutzer, S. (1997). Modellierung der mittleren Zirkulation im Südatlantik. *Berichte aus dem Institut für Meereskunde an der Christian-Albrecht-Universität, Kiel*, **287**, 130 pp.
- Suga, T. and L.D. Talley (1995). Antarctic Intermediate Water circulation in the tropical and subtropical South Atlantic. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **100**(C7): 13,441–13,453.
- Swallow, J.C. and R.T. Pollard (1988). Flow of bottom water through the Madagascar Basin. *Deep-Sea Research*, **35**(8): 1437–1440.
- Swallow, J.C., M. Fieux and F. Schott (1988). The boundary currents east and north of Madagascar. Part I. Geostrophic currents and transports. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **93**(C5): 4951–4962.
- Swallow, J.C., F. Schott and M. Fieux (1991). Structure and transport of the East African Coastal Current. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **96**(C12): 22,245–22,257.
- Swart, V.P. and J.L. Largier (1987). Thermal structure of Agulhas Bank water. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **5**: 243–253.
- Taljaard, J.J. (1977). South Africa's contribution to the FGGE drifting buoy programme for the southern hemisphere. *News Letter, South African Weather Bureau*, **339**: 198–207.
- Taljaard, J.J., J. van Heerden, R.D. Sewell and W. Jordaan (1983). South African drifting buoy programmes. *South African Weather Bureau, Technical Paper*, **12**: 1–57.
- Taljaard, J.J. and H. van Loon (1984). Climate of the Indian Ocean south of 35°S. In *Climates of the Oceans*, editor H. van Loon, World Survey of Climatology Volume 15, Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp. 505–601.
- Taunton-Clark, J. and L.V. Shannon (1988). Annual and interannual variability in the South-East Atlantic during the 20th century. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **6**: 97–196.
- Tennant, W.J. (1996). Influence of Indian Ocean sea-surface temperature anomalies on the general circulation of southern Africa. *South African Journal of Science*, **92**(6): 289–295.
- Thibault-Botha, D., J.R.E. Lutjeharms and M.J. Gibbons (2004). Siphonophore assemblages along the East Coast of South Africa: mesoscale distribution and seasonal variations. *Journal of Plankton Research*, **26**(9): 1–14.
- Thomsen, H. (1933). The circulation in the depths of the Indian Ocean. *Journal Conseil*, **8**(1): 73–79.
- Thomsen, H. (1935). Entstehung und Verbreitung einiger charakteristischer Wassermassen in dem Indischen und südlichen Pazifischen Ozean. *Annalen der Hydrographie und Maritimen Meteorologie*, **63**(8): 293–305.
- Thomson, C.W. and J. Murray (editors) (1881–1895). *Report on the scientific results of the voyage of H.M.S. Challenger during the years 1873–1876*. His Majesty's Stationery Office, London, 50 volumes.
- Thompson, S.R., D.P. Stevens and K. Döös (1997). The importance of interocean exchange south of Africa in a numerical model. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **102**(C2): 3303–3315.
- Tomczak, M. (1984). Ausbreitung und Vermischung der Zentralwassermassen in den Tropengebieten der Ozeane. 2. Indischer und Pazifischer Ozean. *Oceanologica Acta*, **7**(3): 271–288.
- Toole, J.M. and B.A. Warren (1993). A hydrographic section across the subtropical South Indian Ocean. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **40**(10): 1973–2019.
- Toole, J.M. and M.E. Raymer (1985). Meridional heat and fresh water budgets of the South Indian Ocean – revisited. *Deep-Sea Research*, **32**(8): 917–928.
- Treguier, A.M., B. Barnier, A.P. de Miranda, J.M. Molines, N. Grima, M. Imbard, G. Madec, C. Messenger, Y. Reynaud and S. Michel (2001). An eddy-permitting model of the Atlantic circulation: Evaluating open boundary conditions. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **106**(C10): 22,115–22,129.
- Treguier, A.M., O. Boebel, B. Barnier and G. Madec (2003). Agulhas eddy fluxes in a 1/6° Atlantic model. *Deep-Sea Research II*, **50**(1): 251–280.
- Tripp, R.T. (~1967). *An Atlas of Coastal Surface Drifts; Cape Town to Durban*. South African Oceanographic Data Centre, Department of Oceanography, University of Cape Town, Rondebosch, South Africa, 12 pp.
- Tyson, P.D. (1986). *Climate Change and Variability in Southern Africa*. Oxford University Press, Cape Town, 220 pp.
- Tyson, P.D., T.G.J. Dyer and M.N. Manetse (1975). Secular changes in South African rainfall: 1880 to 1972. *Quarterly Journal of the Royal Meteorological Society*, **101**(430): 817–833.
- United Kingdom Hydrographic Office (1970). *Routing Charts – Indian Ocean*. British Admiralty, Hydrographic Office, London, No. 5126.
- Valentine, H.R. and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (1986). Eddy generation at the Sub-Tropical Convergence south of South Africa. *CSIR Research Report*, **631**, 23 pp. + 27 figures.
- Valentine, H.R., C.M. Duncombe Rae, R.C. van Ballegooyen and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (1988). The Subtropical Convergence and Agulhas Retroflexion Cruise (SCARC); Data Report. *CSIR Report, T/SEA 8804*, 10 pp. + 56 tables.
- Valentine, H.R., R.C. van Ballegooyen and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (1991). Data report on the Natal Bight Cruise, July 1989. *CSIR Report, EMA-D 9107*, ii + 15 pp. + figures + tables.
- Valentine, H.R., J.R.E. Lutjeharms and G.B. Brundrit (1993). The water masses and volumetry of the southern Agulhas

- Current region. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **40**(6): 1285–1305.
- Van Aken, H.M. (2001). RV Pelagia shipboard report: Cruise 64PE176, Agulhas Current Sources Experiment (ACSEX). NIOZ, Texel, pp. 22 + appendix.
- Van Aken, H., A.K. van Veldhoven, C. Veth, W.P.M. de Ruijter, P.J. van Leeuwen, S.S. Drijfhout, C.P. Whittle and M. Rouault (2003). Observations of a young Agulhas ring, Astrid, during MARE, the Mixing of Agulhas Rings Experiment, in March 2000. *Deep-Sea Research II*, **50**(1): 167–195.
- Van Aken, H.M., H. Ridderinkhof and W.P.M. de Ruijter (2004). North Atlantic Deep Water in the south-western Indian Ocean. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **51**(6): 755–776.
- Van Ballegooyen, R.C., M.L. Gründlingh and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (1994). Eddy fluxes of heat and salt from the southwest Indian Ocean into the southeast Atlantic Ocean: a case study. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **99**(C7): 14,053–14,070.
- Van der Elst, R.P. (1988). Shelf ichthyofauna off Natal. In *Coastal Ocean Studies off Natal, South Africa*, editor E.H. Schumann, Lecture Notes of Coastal and Estuarine Studies, 26, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, pp. 209–225.
- Van der Vaart, P.C.F and W.P.M. de Ruijter (2001). Stability of western boundary currents with an application to pulselike behaviour of the Agulhas Current. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **31**(9): 2625–2644.
- Van Gogh, J. (1857). *Uitkomsten van Wetenskap en Ervaring aangaande winden en zeestromingen in sommige gedeelten van den oseaan*. Koninklijk Nederlandsch Meteorologisch Instituut, Bosch en Zoon, 74 pp.
- Van Gogh, J. (1858). De stormen nabij de Kaap de Goede Hoop in verband beschouwd met de temperatuur der zee. *Verhandelingen en Mededelingen der Koninklijke Akademie, afdeling Natuurkunde*, **8**, 23 pp.
- Van Heerden, J. and J.J. Taljaard (1998). Africa and surrounding waters. In *Meteorology of the Southern Hemisphere*, editors D. J. Karoly and D. G. Vincent, *Meteorological Monographs*, **27**(49): 141–174.
- Van Leeuwen, P.J. (1997). A monitoring system for the Indian-Atlantic connection. In *Operational Oceanography, The Challenge for European Co-operation*, editors J.H. Stel, H.W.A. Behrens, J.C. Borst, L.J. Droppert and J. van der Meulen, Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp. 596–602.
- Van Leeuwen, P.J. (1999). The time-mean circulation in the Agulhas region determined with the ensemble smoother. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **104**(C1): 1393–1404.
- Van Leeuwen, P.J., W.P.M. de Ruijter and J.R.E. Lutjeharms (2000). Natal Pulses and the formation of Agulhas rings. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **105**(C3): 6425–6436.
- Van Leeuwen, P.J. (2001). An ensemble smoother with error estimates. *Monthly Weather Review*, **129**(4): 709–728.
- Van Riel, P.M. (1932). Einige ozeanographische Beobachtungen im Roten Meer, Golf van Aden und Indischen Ozean. *Annalen der Hydrographie, Berlin*, **60**(10): 401–407.
- Van Sittert, L. (1995). ‘The Handmaid of Industry’: marine science and fisheries development in South Africa 1895–1939. *Studies of History and Philosophy of Science*, **26**(4): 531–558.
- Verheye, H.M., L. Hutchings, J.A. Huggett, R.A. Carter, W.T. Peterson and S.J. Painting (1994). Community structure, distribution and tropic ecology of zooplankton on the Agulhas Bank with special reference to copepods. *South African Journal of Science*, **90**(3): 154–165.
- Villacastin-Herrero, C.A., L.G. Underhill, R.J.M. Crawford and L.V. Shannon (1996). Sea surface temperature of oceans surrounding subequatorial Africa: seasonal patterns, spatial coherence and long-term trends. *South African Journal of Science*, **92**(4): 189–197.
- Vincent, E. and N.J. Shackleton (1980). Agulhas Current temperature distribution delineated by oxygen isotope analysis of foraminifer in surface sediments. *Cushman Foundation Special Publication*, **19**: 84–95.
- Von Drygalski, E. (editor) (1908–1952). *Ergebnisse der Deutschen Südpolar-Expedition 1901–1903*. Reichsamtes des Innern, Berlin, Bände I – XX.
- Von Schleinitz, B. (1889–1890). *Die Forschungsreise S.M.S. “Gazelle” in den Jahren 1874 bis 1876 unter Kommando des Kapitäns zur Zee Freiherrn von Schleinitz*. Hydrographische Amt, Reichs-Marine-Ampts, Berlin, Bände I–V.
- Wakker, K.F., R.C.A. Zandbergen, M.C. Naeije and B.A.C. Ambrosius (1990). GEOSAT altimeter data analysis for the oceans around South Africa. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **95**(C3): 2991–3006.
- Wakker, K.F., M.C. Naeije, R. Scharroo and B.A.C. Ambrosius (1991). Extraction of mesoscale ocean currents information from Geosat altimeter data. *Proceedings of the Space & Sea Colloquium*, Paris, ESA SP-312, pp. 221–226.
- Walker, N.D. (1986). Satellite observations of the Agulhas Current and episodic upwelling south of Africa. *Deep-Sea Research*, **33**(8): 1083–1106.
- Walker, N.D. and R.D. Mey (1988). Ocean/atmosphere heat fluxes within the Agulhas Retroflexion region. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **93**(C12): 15473–15483.
- Walker N.D. and J.A. Lindesay (1989). Preliminary observations of oceanic influences on the February–March 1988 floods in central South Africa. *South African Journal of Science*, **85**(3): 164–169.
- Walker, N.D. (1990). Links between South African summer rainfall and temperature variability of the Agulhas and Benguela Current Systems. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **95**(C3): 3297–3319.
- Walker, N.D. and F.A. Shillington (1990). The effect of oceanographic variability on South African weather and climate. *South African Journal of Science*, **86**(7/8/9/10): 382–386.
- Wang, L. and C.J. Koblinsky (1996). Low-frequency variability in the region of the Agulhas Retroflexion. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **101**(C2): 3597–3614.
- Warren, B.A. (1974). Deep flow in the Madagascar and Mascarene basins. *Deep-Sea Research*, **21**(1): 1–21.
- Warren, B.A. (1978). Bottom water transport through the

- Southwest Indian Ridge. *Deep-Sea Research*, **25**(3): 315–321.
- Warren, B.A. (1981). The shallow oxygen minimum of the South Indian Ocean. *Deep-Sea Research*, **28**(8): 859–864.
- Warren, B.A. (1981). Transindian hydrographic section at Lat. 18° S: Property distributions and circulation in the South Indian Ocean. *Deep-Sea Research*, **28**(8): 759–788.
- Warren, B.A., T. Whitworth and J.H. LaCasce (2002). Forced resonant undulations in the deep Mascarene Basin. *Deep-Sea Research II*, **49**(7–8): 1513–1526.
- Webb, D.J. (1999). An analytical model of the Agulhas Current as a western boundary current with linearly varying viscosity. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **29**(7): 1517–1527.
- Wedepohl, P.M., J.R.E. Lutjeharms and J.M. Meeuwis (2000). Surface drift in the South East Atlantic ocean. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, **22**: 71–79.
- Weeks, S.J. and F.A. Shillington (1994). Interannual scales of variation of pigment concentrations from coastal zone colour scanner data in the Benguela upwelling system and the Subtropical Convergence zone south of Africa. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **99**(C4): 7385–7399.
- Weeks, S.J. and F.A. Shillington (1996). Phytoplankton pigment distribution and frontal structure in the subtropical convergence region south of Africa. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **43**(5): 739–768.
- Weeks, S.J., F.A. Shillington and G. B. Brundrit (1998). Seasonal and spatial SST variability in the Agulhas retroflection and Agulhas return current. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **45**(10): 1611–1625.
- Weijer, W., W.P.M. de Ruijter, H.A. Dijkstra and P.J. van Leeuwen (1999). Impact of interbasin exchange on the Atlantic overturning circulation. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **29**(9): 2266–2284.
- Weijer, W., W.P.M. de Ruijter and H.A. Dijkstra (2001). Stability of the Atlantic overturning circulation: competition between Bering Strait freshwater flux and Agulhas heat and salt sources. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, **31**(8): 2385–2402.
- Weijer, W., W.P.M. de Ruijter, A. Sterl and S.S. Drijfhout (2002). Response of the Atlantic overturning circulation to South Atlantic sources of buoyancy. *Global and Planetary Change*, **34**(3–4): 293–311.
- Weimerskirch, H., M. le Corre, S. Jaquemet, M. Potier and F. Marsac (2004). Foraging strategy of a top predator in tropical waters: great frigatebirds in the Mozambique Channel. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, **275**( ): 297–308.
- Wells, N.C., V. Ivchenko and S.E. Best (2000). Instabilities in the Agulhas retroflection current system – A comparative model study. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **105**(C2): 3233–3241.
- Whitworth, T. and W.D. Nowlin (1987). Water masses and currents of the Southern Ocean at the Greenwich meridian. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **92**(C6): 6462–6476.
- Wilkin, J.L. and R.A. Morrow (1994). Eddy kinetic energy and momentum flux in the Southern Ocean: comparison of a global eddy-resolving model with altimeter, drifter, and current-meter data. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **99**(C4): 7903–7916.
- Willimzik, M. (1929). Die Strömungen im Subtropischen Konvergenzgebiet des Indischen Ozeans. *Veröffentlichungen des Instituts für Meereskunde an der Universität Berlin, n.f. A*(14): 1–27.
- Winter, A. and K. Martin (1990). Late quaternary history of the Agulhas Current. *Paleoceanography*, **5**(4): 479–486.
- Witter, D. L. and A.L. Gordon (1999). Interannual variability of South Atlantic circulation from 4 years of TOPEX/POSEIDON satellite altimeter observations. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **104**(C9): 20,927–20,948.
- Wüst, G. (1934). Anzeichen von Beziehungen zwischen Bodenstrom und Relief in der Tiefsee des Indischen Ozeans. *Naturwissenschaften*, **22**(16): 241–244.
- Wüst, G. (1935). Die Ausbreitung des antarktischen Bodenwassers im Atlantischen und Indischen Ozean. *Zeitschrift zur Geophysik*, **11**: 40–49.
- Wüst, G. (1935). Zur Frage des Indischen Tiefenstroms. *Naturwissenschaften*, **23**(9): 137–139.
- Wüst, G. (1960). Proposed International Indian Ocean Expedition, 1962–1863. *Deep-Sea Research*, **6**(3): 245–249.
- Wyrtki, K. (1971). *Oceanographic Atlas of the International Indian Ocean Expedition*. National Science Foundation, Washington, D.C. 531 pp.
- Wyrtki, K. (1973). Physical oceanography of the Indian Ocean. In *Biology of the Indian Ocean*, editor B. Zeitzschel, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, pp. 18–36.
- Wyrtki, K., L. Magaard and J. Hagar (1976). Eddy energy in the oceans. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **81**(15): 2641–2646.
- You, Y. and M. Tomczak (1993). Thermocline circulation and ventilation in the Indian Ocean derived from water mass analysis. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **40**(1): 13–56.
- You, Y. (1996). Dianeutral mixing in the thermocline of the Indian Ocean. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **43**(3): 291–320.
- You, Y. (1997). Seasonal variations of thermocline circulation and ventilation in the Indian Ocean. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **102**(C5): 10,391–10,422.
- You, Y. (1998). Dianeutral mixing and transformation of Antarctic Intermediate Water in the Indian Ocean. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **103**(C13): 30,941–30,971.
- You, Y. (1998). Intermediate water circulation and ventilation of the Indian Ocean derived from water-mass contributions. *Journal of Marine Research*, **56**(5): 1029–1067.
- You, Y. (1999). Dianeutral mixing, transformation and transport of the deep water of the Indian Ocean. *Deep-Sea Research I*, **46**(1): 109–148.
- You, Y. (2000). Implications of the deep circulation and ventilation of the Indian Ocean on the renewal mechanism of North Atlantic Deep Water. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **105**(C10): 23,895–23,926.
- You, Y.Z. (2002). Quantitative estimate of Antarctic Intermediate Water contributions from the Drake Passage and the southwest Indian Ocean to the South Atlantic. *Jour-*



- 
- nal of Geophysical Research*, **107**(C4): 10.1029/2001JC000880.
- You, Y., J.R.E. Lutjeharms, O. Boebel and W.P.M. de Ruijter (2003). Quantification of interocean exchange of intermediate water masses around southern Africa. *Deep-Sea Research II*, **50**(1): 197–228.
- Zahn, W. (1984). Eine Abschätzung des Volumentransportes im Kanal von Moçambique während des Zeitraumes Oktober–November 1957. *Beiträge zur Meereskunde*, **51**: 67–74.
- Zahn, W. (1984). Influence of bottom topography on currents in the Mozambique Channel. *Tropical Ocean–Atmosphere Newsletter*, **26**: 22–23.
- Zimmermann, W.F.A. (1865). *Der Erdball und Seine Naturwunder*, Gustav Hempel, Berlin, 544 pp. (as shown in Peterson *et al.*, 1993).
-

# Name Index

---

In order to facilitate ease of reading of the text, references have as a rule been indicated by numerical superscripts. However, some key contributors to current knowledge on the greater Agulhas Current system are mentioned by name where their most important work is discussed. This index therefore lists the names of this subjectively selected collection of individuals only; a full list of all significant contributors as well as their works is to be found in the Bibliography. Wherever a picture of a person has been used in the text, this is indicated by a page number given in bold.

- Andrau 155, 225  
Aken, van 174  
Arhan 180
- Ballegooyen, van 174, 187, 193, 194  
Bang 132, 155, **155**  
Barlow 54, 92  
Beal 38, 95  
Belin 2  
Bennett 170, 192  
Berghaus 53  
Biastoch 47  
Boddem 197  
Boebel 178, 211  
Boudra 11, 199  
Boyd 140  
Bryden 95  
Byrne 180, 193, 194
- Cantino 2  
Chapman 140, 167  
Chassignet 11  
Cheney 154  
Chervin 47, 66, 197, 204  
Chun 5, 19  
Clement 193, 194  
Clowes 19  
Cooper 193, 194  
Covens 2
- Da Gama 1  
d'Anville 2  
Darbyshire 155  
Defant 2  
De Ruijter 75, 77, 81, 118, 157, **157**, 199  
Dias 1, 2  
Dietrich v, 2, 19, 155, 156  
Donohue 24, 81  
Duncan 57, 80, 84, 214  
Duncombe Rae 171, 174, 193, 194
- Emery 40  
Evans 174, 180, 193, 194
- Feron 85, 194  
Findlay 2  
Flemming 96  
Foreest, van 192  
Foulis 103  
Fu 80, 197
- Garzoli 162, 174, 192, 194  
Georgi 170  
Gibbons 15  
Gilchrist 4  
Gill 110, 138, 148  
Godfred-Spenning 11  
Gogh, van 225  
Goñi 192–194  
Gordon 85, 122, 157, **157**, 166, 168, 170, 191–194  
Goschen 129  
Grant 225  
Gründlingh 44, 85, 88, 91, 93, 100, 101, 105
- Harris 65, 68, 74, 80, 81, 85, 125, 133, 192, 220, **220**  
Hasio 2  
Haxby 193, 194  
Holfort 197  
Homan 2  
Hondio 2  
Humboldt, von 1
- Jacobs 170  
Jansen 225  
Jorge da Silva 71, 73, 82, 83  
Jury 12
- Kerhallet 2, 53  
Kostianoy 217  
Krümmel 2, 53

- Largier 140, 145  
Leeuwen, van 203  
Levitus 205  
Linschoten, van 2  
Luyten 152
- MacDonald 197  
Machu 18  
Mallory 16  
Martin 130  
Mason 223  
Matano 47, 197  
Maury 2, 225  
McCartney 103  
McDonagh 174  
Meincke 40  
Menache 80, 81  
Mercier 44  
Michaelis 2, 54  
Möller 2, 19  
Mortier 2  
Murray 19
- Olson 174, 180, 193, 194
- Paech 2, 54  
Park 218  
Pearce 91, 96, 98, 109, 113  
Petermann 53  
Peterson 192  
Philander 197  
Pichevin 200  
Prell 15
- Quartly 65
- Raymer 170  
Reason 11, 12  
Rennell 1, 2, 3, 3, 155  
Richardson 187  
Ridderinkhof 77  
Rintoul 197  
Rouault 135
- Sætre 71, 73, 82, 83  
Schlitzer 197
- Schmitz 152  
Schott 3, 19  
Schouten 89, 187  
Schumann 105, 108, 110, 129, 138, 149  
Semtner 47, 66, 197, 204  
Shannon 133, 162  
Shillington 190  
Simpson 64  
Snyman 133  
Srokosz 65  
Stavropoulos 133, 152  
Stramma 192, 215  
Swallow 60  
Swart 145
- Tchernia ix  
Thompson 197  
Thomsen 2  
Thomson 19  
Toole 24, 32, 40, 81, 170  
Tyson 223
- Valentine 164  
Valk 2  
Van Aken 34, 174  
Van Ballegooyen 174, 187, 193, 194  
Van Foreest 192  
Van Gogh 225  
Van Leeuwen 203  
Van Linschoten 2  
Von Humboldt 1
- Walker 12, 223  
Warren 32, 40, 167  
Weeks 44  
Weijer 197  
Winter 130  
Woodgate-Jones 193  
Wüst 19  
Wyrcki 56
- You 40, 191
- Zahn 75, 80  
Zimmerman 2, 53
-

# Subject Index

---

This Subject Index is considerably more comprehensive than is normal for a textbook of this kind. This calls for a brief justification. The text attempts, first, to give a pre-digested summation of all that is currently known about the greater Agulhas Current system. In addition, it also aims at facilitating easy access to the extensive, but scattered, literature. If a particular subject is therefore mentioned only in passing in this text, but original publications on the subject exist and are referenced here, this subject has been included in the index. Copious cross-referencing is also offered. It is hoped that interested individuals will, by making use of both index and text in this way, be able easily to find out much more about many subjects than is directly available in the text of this monograph itself. Normal numbers indicate page numbers where a subject is mentioned in the text; bold numbers where a subject appears in a figure.

- ACE (*see* Agulhas Current Experiment)
- ACSEX (*see* Agulhas Current Sources Experiment)
- ARC (*see* Agulhas Retroflexion Cruise)
- ASTTEX (*see* Agulhas-South Atlantic Thermohaline Transport Experiment)
- abyssal boundary currents
  - east of Madagascar 69
- acoustic Doppler current profiler (*see* current measurements)
- Africana II* (vessel) 21
- Agulhas Bank
  - African penguins swimming across 14
  - Agulhas Current's effect on 143, 145, 146
  - Agulhas Bank Autumn Bottom Water on **146**
  - Agulhas Bank Autumn Surface Water on **146**
  - Agulhas Bank Spring Mixed Water on **146**
  - Agulhas filaments advected along 139, 192
  - Agulhas rings lodged against 139
  - atmospheric conditions over **142**, 143, 146, 148
  - bathymetry of 91, **139**, **140**
  - biology of 142, 143, 146
  - bottom movement over 141
  - bottom water on 129, 135, **1129**, **140**, 141, 142, **145**
  - bottom ridge, cold, on **140**, 141, 142, **143**, **145**
  - chlorophyll enhancement at shelf edge of 139
  - Central Water moving onto 140, 142, 143
  - coastal upwelling over 139, 140, 141, **142**, 190
  - cold ridge on **140**, 141, **143**, **144**, **145**
  - currents observed on 145, 146, **148**
  - current jet off western 146
  - eastern 140
  - ecosystem influence of Agulhas Current on 15, 146
  - filament movement past 131
  - fisheries, effect on 146
  - fishing grounds on 4
  - flow across 137
  - hydrographic observations on 121, 122, **129**, **140**, 141, **144**, **145**, **147**
  - hydrographic provinces of 139
  - hydrographic sections across **129**, **140**, 141, **144**, **145**, **147**
  - hydrography of 138
  - ichthyo-ecology, effect on 146
  - Indian Ocean Central Water on **146**
  - inertial fluctuations on 145, **148**
  - internal tides over 145
  - lee eddy, modelling of 127
  - lee eddy off 127, 128, **128**, 146, 176, 177 (*see also* lee eddy)
  - location of **6**, **139**
  - mixed layer over 140, **141**, 143
  - model of circulation on 142, 144
  - Natal Pulse, motion along **161**
  - nutrients over 168
  - oxygen along shelf edge of **167**, 167
  - plumes, warm water, at **116**, 125, **126**, 127, 128, **129**, 129, 132, 139
  - satellite studies of 133, 135
  - seasonality of waters on 110, 129, 140, **141**, 144, **147**
  - sea surface temperatures over **142**, **147**
  - shear edge eddies off 127, **127**, **128**, **129**, 176
  - shelf edge current of 139, 143, 176
  - shelf edge front of **126**, 140
  - shelf edge upwelling at 139
  - South Indian Central Water moving onto 142, 143
  - stratification over 140, **141**, 142, **147**
  - Subtropical Surface Water on **146**
  - temperature–salinity relations for water over 137, 143, **146**
  - thermocline over 129, **141**, 143, **144**, 144, **147**
  - tides on **148**
  - Tropical Surface Water over **146**
  - upwelling at capes and headlands of 140, 141
  - upwelling on 133, 141, **145**, **159**
  - volume flux at southern tip of 121, **122**
  - western 140
  - winds at 141, **142**, 143, 144, 145, 148, 149



- Agulhas Basin
- Antarctic Bottom Water, movement in 32
  - sea height variability in 69
- Agulhas Bight
- location of **139**
  - current location at **109, 109, 112**
  - hydrographic section at 123
  - shear edge eddies in 127, **127, 131**
- Agulhas, Cape (*see* Cape Agulhas)
- Agulhas Current (*see also* Agulhas Undercurrent; Northern Agulhas Current; Southern Agulhas Current)
- age of 130
  - Agulhas Bank, influence on 143, 145
  - Agulhas Plateau, at 120
  - Antarctic Circumpolar Current, merging with 218
  - Antarctic Intermediate Water in 44
  - “Atlantic branch” of 2
  - atmosphere, influence on overlying 9, 137, 235
  - atmospheric circulation over 149
  - baroclinic instability of 118
  - Benguela Current, volume flux contribution to 190
  - bifurcation of 155
  - biological influence of 14, 15, 16
  - boundary, offshore, of 97, **97, 98**
  - chaetognath distribution, influence on (*see also* chaetognaths) 15
  - characteristics, unique, of 7
  - cloud formation over 12
  - coastal rainfall, influence on **13**
  - compared to Gulf Stream 2
  - current edge, inshore, of 97, **97, 98**
  - current velocities for **93, 94, 94, 95, 97, 98, 98**
  - depth of **43**
  - drifters, surface, in 98, 104, 112, 120, 152, 158, 211, **212**
  - early measurements of 53, 54, **55**
  - eddies of (*see also* Agulhas (Current) eddies) 144, 153, 170, 198, **222, 226, 227**
  - eddies, adsorption of, onto **116, 118**
  - eddy kinetic energy for 91, **92, 151**
  - Ekman veering under 110, 131, 132
  - extent, latitudinal, of 5
  - filaments of (*see* Agulhas filaments)
  - first written account of 1
  - first truly scientific investigation of 2
  - fish larvae, influence on distribution of 14
  - fully constituted at 91
  - German, early research on 2, 3, 19
  - giant waves, influence on 16, 105
  - global thermohaline overturning, role in 130, 151, 191
  - growth in knowledge of ix, x, 3
  - heat fluxes to atmosphere from (*see also* heat fluxes) 9, 12, 13, 223
  - historical concepts on 1
  - hydrographic section across 122, **123, 134, 213, 224**
  - IIOE, impact of, on research on 21, 157
  - indicator species for 15
  - inflow into 104
  - influence on Agulhas Bank of 143, 145, 146
  - inhibiting propagation of shelf waves 149
  - inshore counter current to 116
  - kinetic energy for 91
  - knowledge on ix
  - latitudinal extent of 5
  - leakage from (*see* inter-basin exchange)
  - location of current core of **93, 93, 97, 98, 126**
  - meandering of 7, 125, **126, 127**
  - modelled as inertial jet 94, 120, 199, **200**
  - modelled 47, **49, 66, 151, 154, 199, 201, 202, 204, 205**
  - moisture fluxes to the atmosphere from 12
  - myctophids, influence on distribution of (*see* myctophids)
  - name, origin of its 2
  - Natal Bight, off the **93, 99, 109, 111, 112, 113**
  - northern (*see* Northern Agulhas Current)
  - nutrients at rims of 168
  - oxygen, subsurface minimum layer in 191, **213, 215**
  - path of **93, 93, 94, 100, 126, 126, 127, 213, 213**
  - pollution, plastic, by (*see also* pollution) 14
  - publication rate on ix, x, 4
  - rainfall, influence on **13, 13, 137, 223**
  - recirculation, contribution of, to 85
  - Red Sea Water in 38, **38, 40, 101, 102, 106, 107, 107, 123, 124**
  - Red Sea Water, flux of, in 40
  - retroflection of (*see* Agulhas (Current) retroflection)
  - retroflection, upstream, on 6, 120, 196
  - return flow of (*see* Agulhas Return Current)
  - rings of (*see* Agulhas rings)
  - salinity of **97, 99, 106, 106, 107, 114, 124, 125, 146**
  - salinities, surface, of 5
  - salinities, surface, off Durban **99**
  - satellite remote sensing, studied by **100, 116, 125, 126, 133**
  - seasonal variability of 91, 92
  - sections, vertical, across **86, 93, 122, 123, 123, 134, 213, 213, 224**
  - sediments below 96, 130
  - sheer edge features of 7, 100, **100, 127, 127, 131, 176, 177, 177**
  - shelf circulation, effect on, knowledge gained on 235
  - shelf waves, inhibiting progression of 149
  - ships’ drift measurements in sources of 53, 54
  - siphonophores in 137
  - sources of 5, 53, 85
  - sources, lack of knowledge on 236
  - sources, conceptual image for **67**
  - speeds decreased, simulated for 203
  - speeds simulated for 95, 203
  - speeds in 4, **43, 92, 95, 97, 98, 99, 108, 144**
  - speeds, surface, of **93, 94**
  - stabilisation, by continental slope, of 94
  - storms, intensity of, influence on 13, 14
  - structure function analysis of 152
  - subgyre, fed by, knowledge gained on 235
  - Subtropical Convergence, effect on (*see also* Subtropical

- Convergence) 218, **219**, **221**, 221, 222
- seasonality of surface drift of 55
- surface drift of 55, **55**, 91, 92, **93**
- temperature of **134**
- temperatures, surface, of 5
- temperatures, surface, off Durban **97**, **97**, **99**
- temperature–salinity relationships of **39**, **102**, 101, **102**, **106**, 106, **107**, **124**, **179**
- temperature sections across 93, 122, **123**, 123, **125**, **134**, **224**
- textbook treatment of ix
- trajectory of **93**, 93, 94, **100**, **126**, 126, 127, **213**, 213
- Tropical Surface Water in 101, **102**, **106**, 106, 107, 122
- tunicates, influence on distribution of pelagic, in (*see* tunicates)
- upstream retroflexion of 6, 120, 196
- upwelling inshore of (*see also* Port Alfred upwelling cell) **132**, **134**, **136**, **138**, 138
- variability, surface, off Durban **97**, 98
- velocities, surface, off Durban **94**, **97**, **99**, 99
- velocity of 4, **43**, 92, **93**, **94**, 95, **95**, 97, 98, **99**, **108**, 144, 203
- vertical extent of 5, **94**, **95**, **123**
- vertical profiles for **43**, 93, 122, **123**, 123, **134**, **213**, 213, **224**
- vertical velocity structure of **43**, **94**, **95**, **99**
- volume flux of 6, 11, 42, **87**, 100, **101**, 144, 168, **170**, 214, 215, **215**
- volume fluxes simulated for 202, **203**
- volume transport of 100, 121, 156, 168, **170**
- volume transport of, downstream increase in 122, 168, **170**
- volume transport of, modelled **48**, 203
- water of (*see* Agulhas (Current) water)
- waves, huge, on 16, 105
- wave amplification on 16, 105
- western boundary current nature of 7, 8, 9
- western limb of anti-cyclonic gyre, as 5, 17, **24**
- width of 4, 94, **97**, 98
- winds, influence on 1, 22, 23, 164
- Agulhas (Current) eddies (*see also* eddy)
  - Agulhas retroflexion, at 198, **226**, **227**
  - current speeds of 227
  - dimensions of 227
  - drifter in 227
  - heat flux, meridional, by 198
  - heat loss to atmosphere over 12, 13, 198, 226
  - hydrographic section across **163**, 198, **222**
  - nomenclature of 170
  - Subtropical Convergence, presence at 153, 170, **222**, **227**
  - volume transport of 227
- Agulhas Current Experiment (ACE)
  - current measurements in Agulhas Current by 157
  - Agulhas Undercurrent discovered during 157
- Agulhas Current filaments (*see* Agulhas filaments)
- Agulhas (Current) retroflexion (*see also* Upstream retroflexion)
  - altimetric observations of 25, 154, **154**, 204
  - Antarctic Bottom Water in **166**
  - Antarctic Intermediate Water in 164, 165, **166**
  - atmospheric boundary layer over 185
  - beta ( $\beta$ ) effect, role of, on 199
  - borders, thermal, of **153**
  - Circumpolar Deep Water in **166**
  - concept, historical development of, on 155
  - configuration of **158**, 158
  - continental rainfall patterns, influence on 151
  - CTD observations in **165**
  - current, simulated, in 199, **200**, **202**, **204**
  - current measurements in 152, 154, 204
  - drifters in 152, 157, 204, **212**
  - dynamic height of **211**
  - dynamic topography of **171**, **211**
  - dynamics of 199 ff
  - eddy kinetic energy for 152
  - eddy kinetic energy modelled at 204
  - eddy shedding at **226**, **227**, 227
  - eddy variability modelled at 204
  - heat fluxes to atmosphere at 151, 168, 185, 223
  - hydrographic section across **163**, 167, **169**
  - inertial effect in 199
  - inter-basin exchange at 151
  - kinetic energy of 152, **156**, 156
  - kinetic variability for 152
  - limit, easternmost, of 158
  - limit, westernmost, of 158, **160**
  - location, extreme, of 158, **160**
  - loop, diameter of 151, 154, 158
  - loop, locations of 151, 158, **160**
  - loop, progradation of 7, 158, **160**
  - Lower Circumpolar Deep Water in **166**
  - mesoscale turbulence simulated for 154
  - model of 47, 151, 199, **202**, **204**
  - modelled as inertial jet 199, **200**
  - moisture fluxes to atmosphere at 151
  - momentum flux in model of 200
  - Natal Pulse, influence of, on 154, 159, 160
  - North Atlantic Deep Water in 164, **166**
  - nutrients in 168
  - origin of term 155
  - oxygen minimum, shallow, in **167**, 215
  - portrayal of **6**, **158**, **159**, **163**, **177**
  - progradation events of 159, **160**
  - rainfall, influence on 11, 151
  - Red Sea Water in 30, **166**, 166
  - ring shedding at 159, **162**
  - ring shedding frequency at 162
  - ring shedding, model of, at **201**, **202**, **204**, **205**
  - satellite study of 133, 158, **159**, **160**
  - sea surface temperatures of 153, **153**, **159**
  - seasonality in 154, 195
  - speeds in 158, 218, **219**
  - stability, locational, of 156, 158, 159, **163**, 164
  - (South East Atlantic) Central Water in 164, 165
  - South Indian Central Water in **166**

- (South West Indian) Central Water in 164, 165
- Subantarctic Mode Water in **166**, 166, 167, 168
- Subantarctic Surface Water, equatorward penetration at **159, 162**, 162, **163**, 164
- Subtropical Convergence, effect on 218, **219, 221**, 221, 222
- Subtropical Surface Water in **166**, 166, 167
- temperatures, sea surface, of 153, **153, 159**
- temperature section across **167, 169**
- temperature–salinity relationships for 164, 165, **165, 166**
- Tropical Thermocline Water in **166**, 166, 167
- thermostads, source of, found at 168
- Upper Circumpolar Deep Water in **166**
- upstream (*see* upstream retroflexion)
- variability at 25, 151, 152, 153, **154**, 194, **196**
- viscous stress in modelling of 200
- volume transport of 151, **170**, 170, 218
- volumetry of 164
- water masses of 164, 165, **165, 166**
- water mass modifications at 168
- wind influence on Agulhas water penetration from 164
- Agulhas Current return flow (*see* Agulhas Return Current)
- Agulhas Current rings (*see* Agulhas rings)
- Agulhas Current Sources Experiment (ACSEX)
  - investigating sources of the Agulhas Current 157
- Agulhas Current system
  - biology modelled by NORWECOM for 201
  - climate variations, role in 11, 223
  - conduit for inter-ocean exchanges 233
  - copepoda, influence on distribution of 15
  - currents of, according to ships' drift 53, 54, **54**
  - currents, simulated for **49**
  - early portrayal of 53, 54, **54**
  - eddy kinetic energy for 91, **92**
  - kinetic energy for 91, **92**
  - kinetic energy, simulated for 67
  - knowledge on, growth in ix, **ix**, x
  - marine turtles, influence on 14
  - mesoscale features, lack of information on 237
  - model simulation of 101, 104
  - models of **65**, 101
  - papers on ix, **ix**, x
  - portrayal of **6**
  - rainfall, effects on 11, 223, 234
  - South African rainfall, effects on 11, 223
  - subtropical gyre, part of 17
  - temporal changes of, lack of knowledge on 237
  - treatment of in text books ix
  - whale distribution, influence on 14, 209
- Agulhas (Current) water 10
- Agulhas eddies (*see* Agulhas (Current) eddy)
- Agulhas filaments
  - advection of 7, 131, 139, 186, 192
  - advection of, studied by satellite remote sensing **126**, 133
  - Agulhas Bank, western edge, at 192
  - biological impact of 132
  - cloud formation over 12, 150, 192
  - dimensions of 132
  - encircling Agulhas rings 132, 171, 192
  - fluxes, inter-ocean, of heat and salt by 131, 132
  - frequency of 194
  - heat flux, inter-ocean, due to 194
  - heat fluxes to atmosphere from 192
  - hydrographic stations across **132**, 132
  - image, thermal infrared, of **126, 132**
  - inter-ocean exchanges by 192, 193
  - salt flux, inter-ocean, due to 194
  - salt flux by 192
  - satellite studies of 133
  - South Atlantic Ocean, in 132
  - trajectories of 131
  - volume fluxes from 192
- Agulhas Front
  - associated with Agulhas Return Current 217, 221
  - characteristics of 210, **218**, 220
  - characteristics, thermal, of 217, **218, 222**, 222, 223
  - eddy shedding at 221
  - extent, zonal, of 222
  - hydrographic section across 220, **224**
  - location of 223
  - satellite studies of 217
  - simulation by model of 218
  - surface expression of 217, 223
  - termination, eastern, of 217, **218**, 222
  - volume transport of 215
  - width of 223
  - zonal jet at 220
- Agulhas Plateau
  - Agulhas Current at 120
  - Agulhas Return Current at 120, 210
  - Agulhas Return Current, being crossed by 7, 85, 213
  - Agulhas Return Current, effect in model of, on 228, **229**
  - Antarctic Bottom Water at 32
  - drifters at **212**
  - eddies formed at 211, **212, 226, 227**, 227, **230**
  - flow excursions, northward caused by 210
  - hydrographic section near 213, **213**
  - inflow to Agulhas Current north of 122
  - meander dimensions at 225
  - meander downstream of 225, 226
  - meander at, simulated in model 228
  - meander at, stability of 211, 226
  - name, origin of 2
  - Rossby waves west of 213, 226
  - satellite investigations at **230**
  - upstream retroflexion of Agulhas Current, causing 196
- Agulhas retroflexion (*see* Agulhas (Current) retroflexion)
- Agulhas Retroflexion Cruise (ARC)
  - investigating the Agulhas Current 157
- Agulhas Return Current
  - Agulhas Plateau, at 120, 210
  - Agulhas Plateau, crossing of, by 85, 213
  - altimetric study of 204, 217, 220
  - amalgamation with Agulhas Current 7, 156
  - Antarctic Intermediate Water in 44

- baroclinic instability of 226
- chlorophyll, enhanced levels at 15
- crossing Agulhas Plateau 85
- currents simulated for 228, 229
- current observations in 204, 213, **214**
- current variability of **68**
- deflection of water from 7, 86
- depth of **43**, 210
- dissolved oxygen in 213
- drifters in 204, 209, 211, **212**, 213, 220, **229**
- dynamic topography of **210**, **211**
- dynamics of 228
- eastward extent of 209, 216, 218, 220
- eastward flow of 209
- eddies, Agulhas, at (*see also* Agulhas (Current) eddies) 7, **226**, **227**
- eddies associated with 211, **212**, **226**, **227**, **228**
- eddy, hydrographic section across **228**
- eddy kinetic energy modelled at 204, 230
- eddy shedding from 226, 227
- floats in 211, **212**, 213, **214**
- geostrophic velocities in **43**, **212**, 213, 214, **214**, 218, **219**
- heat loss from 7, 12
- historical mention, first, of 225
- horizontal gradients across **222**
- hydrographic section across 24, **24**, **163**, 209, 213, **213**, **216**, 218, **222**, **224**, **228**
- inertial jet model of 228, **229**
- kinetic variability for **68**, **92**, 153, **154**
- knowledge, lack of, on 236
- leakage from 24, 216, 217, **217**
- low pressure systems, agreement with 11
- meander, stability of 211
- meanders in 160, 210, **210**, 210, 211, **211**, 225, **229**
- meanders modelled for 228
- meanders, wavelenghts of 211, 213
- mixing in 216
- model simulation of 46, **202**, **204**, 218, 228, 230
- Mozambique Plateau, crossing of 86
- myctophids carried by 15
- nomenclature for 220
- North Atlantic Deep Water movement in 32, **33**
- nutrients at rims of 168
- oxygen in 213, **213**, 215
- portrayal of 6, 7, **158**, **159**, **210**
- path stability of 24, **24**, 210, **210**
- planetary wave on 220
- RAFOS floats in 211, **212**, 213, **214**
- Rossby waves in 213, 226
- satellite studies of **159**, 210, 226, **227**
- sea surface temperatures at 153, **153**, 225
- ship's drift for 220
- speed decline eastward of 213
- speeds in **43**, **212**, 213, 214, **214**, 218, **219**
- south of Madagascar 214, 215
- Subtropical Convergence, juxtapositioned to 7, 24, 209, 210, 218
  - surface expression of **210**, **211**, 223
  - termination of 209, 216, 218, 220
  - thermal borders of 223
  - trajectory of 24, **24**, 210, **210**
  - treatment of, by Maury 225
  - turbulence at 25
  - turbulence, mesoscale, simulated for **320**
  - variability of 25, 217, 227
  - velocities, zonal 7, 214, **214**, 218, **219**
  - vertical profiles for **43**, 122, 213, **213**, **214**
  - volume transport of 11, 24, **24**, 42, 121, 170, 214, 215, **215**, 216, **217**, 218, **219**
  - volume transport, eastward diminution of **215**, 216, **217**, **219**
  - volume transport, variability of 215
  - wave attenuation on 105
  - width of 214
- Agulhas return flow (*see* Agulhas Return Current)
- Agulhas Return Front (*see* Agulhas Front)
- Agulhas rings
  - advection rate of (*see* drift rate for)
  - ageing of **183**
  - Agulhas Bank, lodged against 139, **181**, 186
  - Agulhas filaments, encircled by 132, 192
  - altimetric studies of 133, 173, 180, **183**, **186**, 187, 189, **189**, **190**, 193
  - atmospheric boundary layer over 185
  - Angola Basin, in 180, **182**
  - at shelf edge of Agulhas Bank **181**
  - available potential energy of 194
  - azimuthal speeds in 162, 171, **172**, 174, 179
  - baroclinicity of 180
  - barotropicity of 180
  - Benguela Current, in 189
  - birds feeding at 15
  - bottom ridges interaction with 187
  - Brazil, reaching 187, 233
  - Cape Basin, in **173**, 173, **183**, 186
  - characteristics of 162, 194
  - coastal upwelling, interacting with 190, **191**
  - convective mixing in 170, 180, 185
  - corridor of 194
  - current measurements in 180, 186
  - cyclonic eddy at 173, 174, 176 (*see also* Cape Basin cyclones)
  - decay of 180, 182, **183**, **185**, 185, 189
  - depth of 171
  - diameter of 158, 170, 171, **173**, 177, 180
  - dipoles associated with 174, 202
  - dissipation of 180, 182, **183**, **185**, 185, 189
  - dissipation in Cape Basin of 180, 185
  - dissipation of, modelled 182, 184, **184**, 185, **185**
  - dissolved oxygen in 179, **181**, **182**
  - drift direction of 186, **188**
  - drift, studied by altimetry **188**
  - drift rate for 186, 187
  - drift trajectories of 186, **188**



- durability of 7, 180
- dynamic height of 171, **211**
- encircled by Agulhas filaments 132, 171
- ENSO influence on shedding of 160
- erosion of 180, 182, **183, 185**, 185, 189
- filaments associated with 184, **184**, 189
- filament, upwelling, wrapped around 190, **191**
- fish recruitment, hypothesised role on, of 190
- floats, studies using, on 173, 185, 186, 187, 234
- fluxes, inter-ocean, caused by (*see also* inter-basin exchange) 7, 10, 193
- formation of 7
- frequency, of shedding of 10, 160, 162, 193, 194
- global thermohaline circulation cell, role in 191
- heat content of 174, 193
- heat flux, inter-ocean, caused by 193, 194
- heat losses to atmosphere from 162, 180, 185, 186
- hydrographic sections across **163, 172, 181, 182**, 186
- Indian Ocean dipole, influence on shedding of 160
- influence on fish recruitment 190
- interacting in Cape Basin 233
- interaction with seamounts 188, **188**
- inter-ocean exchanges due to 7, 192, 193
- inverted echo sounders in 162, 186
- KAPEX, studies by, of 173
- kinetic energy of 171, 174, 180, 194
- kinetic energy flux by 193, 194
- kinematics of 179
- knowledge, lack of, on 236
- lifetimes of 7, 180
- METEOSAT images for **153**, 171
- migration of 186, **188**
- mixed layer in 185
- modelling of 44, 173, 174, **175**, 182, 184, **184, 185**, 185, 186, 187, 188, 189
- nitrite in 180, **181**
- nomenclature for 170
- nutrients in 180, **181**
- oxygen in 179, **181, 182**
- pathways of 186, 187, **188, 206**
- phosphate in 180, **181**
- potential energy of 174, 180, **183**, 194
- potential energy fluxes due to 193, 194
- portrayal of **158, 159, 163, 175**
- presence in Cape Basin of **173**, 173, **175**
- propagation rates for 186, 187
- radial speeds in 162, 171, **172**, 174, 179
- radius of 171, 174, 180
- RAFOS floats in 173, 185, 186, 187, 234
- Red Sea Water in 40
- Rossby waves radiating from 182
- salinity modification in 185
- salt content of 174, 193
- salt flux, inter-ocean, caused by 193, 194
- satellite investigations of 234
- Scanfish undulator, observations by 185, **186**
- sea surface height at 171
- seamounts, interaction with 180, **189**, 189, 204
- self-steering of 187
- shedding at Agulhas retroflexion 10, 11, 128, 159, 162, **162, 177, 205**
- shedding, discovery of 159
- shedding, frequency of 10, 160, 162, 193, 194
- shedding, modelled 48, **201, 204**, 204, 205, **205**
- shedding, precipitated by Natal Pulse 11, 160
- shedding, seen in satellite imagery **205**
- shedding, triggering processes for 11, 128, 206
- shelf edge currents, influence on, by 146
- south-west of South Africa 170, **173**
- spawning frequency of 10, 11, 128, 159, 162, **162, 177, 205**
- spawning process of 10, 11, 128, 159, 162, **162, 177, 205**
- splitting of 180, 182, **189**
- splitting of, simulated 204
- stability of 174
- Stokes' drift at 182
- Subantarctic Surface Water wedge at spawning of **159, 162, 162**
- tangential speeds of 162, 171, **172**, 174, 179
- thermal structure of 162, **163**, 185
- thermostads in 179, 180, 185
- tracer in 184, **184**
- trajectory of 186, 187, **188, 206**
- trajectories simulated for 204, 205, **206**
- translation of 186, 187, **188**
- upwelling, interaction with 190, 205
- variables of 174
- velocity structure of **172, 175**
- vertical penetration of **163**, 171, **172**, 173
- volume of 171, 174
- volume transport in 156, 170, 193
- west of Cape Town **181**, 186
- Walvis Ridge, beyond 180, **182**, 182
- Walvis Ridge, effect of crossing, on 171, 187, 188, 233
- Agulhas Undercurrent
  - depth of **95**, 95
  - discovered during ACE 157, 235
  - first observations of **95**
  - modelling of 95
  - Red Sea Water in 95
  - simulated velocities for 95
  - speeds of 95
  - volume flux of 95
- Agulhas–South Atlantic Thermohaline Transport Experiment (ASTTEX)
  - studying the flux of Agulhas water in South Atlantic Ocean 157
- airborne radiation thermometry
  - Agulhas Current investigations, first use for 133
  - Natal Bight, over **109, 110**
- Algoa Bay
  - Agulhas Current at 121
  - birds feeding in 137
  - cold water advection into 137

- current edge features at **134**
- current speed at 121
- sand movement at 121
- temperature, decrease southward of 124, **134**
- temperature section at **134**
- upwelling at 141
- upwelling upstream of (*see* Port Alfred upwelling cell)
- warm plume penetration into 129
- Almirante Lacerda* (vessel)
- in Mozambique Channel 81
- Alphard Banks
- division between water characteristics on Agulhas Bank, role as **140**
- Agulhas Bank bathymetry, shallowest part of **139**
- altimetry (*see also* satellite investigations)
- Agulhas Basin, over 68, **68**
- Agulhas retroflection, of 154, **154**, **161**, 204
- Agulhas Return Current, of 204, 217, 220
- Agulhas rings, of 133, 180, **183**, 186, 187, 193
- assimilation in model of 199
- Brazil rings, of 178
- history of use of 4, 133
- kinetic variability, according to 91
- Madagascar, south of 68, **68**
- Mozambique Channel, over 88, **88**
- Natal Pulse, of 114
- Natal Valley, over 68, **68**
- South Atlantic circulation variability, of 194, 195
- South Indian Ocean, of **25**
- South West Indian Ocean, of 88
- southern Agulhas Current, of 204
- surface waves, of 105
- Amazon River
- volume flux of 151
- Amirante Passage
- Antarctic Bottom Water moving through 30
- Indian Deep Water moving through 34
- anchovy
- recruitment affected by Agulhas ring 190
- Andriamanoa
- upwelling cell at 63
- Angola Basin
- Agulhas rings in 180, **182**
- Angola–Benguela Front
- northern border to Benguela upwelling system, as 190
- Angoche
- lee eddy at 73, 78, **79**
- chlorophyll in eddy at 73
- nutrients in eddy at 78
- Antarctic Bottom Water
- Agulhas Basin, movement of, in 32
- Agulhas Current, northern, in 106
- Agulhas retroflection, in **166**
- Crozet Basin, movement in 32
- depth of 30
- Enderby Basin, from 32
- fluxes across South Atlantic Ocean 30
- heat and salt fluxes in South Atlantic modelled for 197
- northern Agulhas Current, in 106
- Mascarene Basin, movement in 32
- Mozambique Basin, in 32
- Mozambique Plateau, movement past 32
- percentage by volume in Indian Ocean **27**, **28**
- percentage by volume in South West Indian Ocean **27**, **28**
- Prince Edward Fracture Zone, movement through 32
- South West Indian Ocean, movement in 30, **31** 32
- temperature–oxygen relationship in western Indian Ocean, of **29**, 30
- temperature–salinity relationship in western Indian Ocean, of **28**, 30
- volume flux in South Atlantic of 197
- Antarctic Circumpolar Current
- location of, according to altimetry 24, **25**
- Agulhas Return Current, merging with 218
- global thermohaline circulation, component of 10
- mass transport function of South Indian, component of **122**
- speeds in 231
- Antarctic Intermediate Water
- Agulhas Current, in 44
- Agulhas Current, in northern **107**, 107
- Antarctic Current, in southern 123
- Agulhas retroflection, in 164, 165, **166**
- Agulhas Return Current, in 44
- Agulhas rings, in 197
- characteristics in South West Indian Ocean 19, **28**, **29**, 30, **35**, **36**, 37
- characteristics in tropical South Atlantic Ocean 9
- circulation in South West Indian Ocean 19, **37**, **84**
- circulation constrained by ridges 84
- depth of, in South West Indian Ocean 37
- distribution of, in South West Indian Ocean **37**, **83**
- Drake Passage, from 192
- East Madagascar Current, in 44, 61
- erosion of **36**, 37
- fluxes across South Atlantic Ocean 197, 198
- heat and volume fluxes across South Atlantic, modelled 197
- Indian Ocean, in 192
- Indonesian Seas, from 192
- inter-ocean leakage of 30, 197
- modelled simulation of 48
- Mozambique Channel, in 37, **37**, **82**, 82, **83**, 83
- Mozambique eddies, in 77
- Mozambique Undercurrent, in 37, **38**, 78
- northern Agulhas Current, in 101, **102**
- South Atlantic Ocean, in 192
- South Indian Ocean, circulation in 40, 192
- South Pacific Ocean, source of, from 192
- South West Indian Ocean, erosion in **36**, 37, 83
- South West Indian Ocean, salinity of, in **28**, **37**
- southern Agulhas Current, in 123, **124**
- subduction at Antarctic Polar Front 30
- subduction below Subtropical Convergence 30

- temperature–salinity relationships in western Indian Ocean of **28**
- temperature–oxygen relationships in western Indian Ocean of **29**
- upward mixing of 21
- volume transport in Agulhas Current of 101, **102**
- volume flux in South Atlantic of 197
- volume transport south of Africa of 192
- Antarctic Polar Front
  - Antarctic Intermediate Water, production of, at 30
  - location of 223
  - characteristics, surface, of **218**, 223
  - characteristics, thermal, of 223
  - volume transport at 122
  - width of 223
- Antarctic Surface Water
  - temperature–salinity relationships, in western Indian Ocean, of **28**
  - temperature–oxygen relationships, in western Indian Ocean, of **29**
- anti-cyclonic eddy (*see* eddy)
- Antilles Current
  - as precursor to Gulf Stream (*see also* Gulf Stream) 8
- annual variation (*see* seasonality)
- Arabian Sea
  - as source of high salinity water 17
- Arabian Sea Water (*see* Red Sea Water; North Indian Intermediate Water)
- Argo
  - profiling floats of 152
- Atlantis II* (vessel)
  - in Mozambique Channel 80
- Atlantic Ocean
  - heat fluxes of, at equator 196
  - overturning circulation in 197, **198**, 233
  - surface energy fluxes of 9
- atmosphere
  - Agulhas Current, affected by 149
  - coastally trapped waves in 148
- atmospheric boundary layer
  - Agulhas Current, over 149, 150
  - Agulhas rings, over 185
  - southern Agulhas Current, over 121, 149, 150
- atmospheric pressure system
  - South African coastline, movement along 148
  - South West Indian Ocean, over 148
  - south-west of Africa 105
  - Southern Ocean, over 105
- BEST (*see* Benguela Sources and Transport)
- baroclinic instability
  - Agulhas Return Current, in 226
  - meanders on southern Agulhas Current, of 125
  - model of Agulhas Current, in 66, 67
  - northern Agulhas Current, of 118
- barotropic instability
  - northern Agulhas Current, of 116
- model of Agulhas Current, in 67
- bathymetry (*see also* bottom topography)
  - Agulhas Bank, of **139**
  - South West Indian Ocean, of **211**
- Benguela Current
  - Agulhas Current, volume flux contribution to 190
  - Agulhas rings, influence of, on 189
  - Agulhas rings, steering of, by 189
  - floats in 187
  - jet in 190
  - leakage into 176, 191, 193, 194, 195, 197, 198, 199, 202
  - model of 202
  - origin in Cape Basin of 189
  - rainfall, South African summer, influence on 223
  - seasonal behaviour of 190
  - sources of 190
  - South Atlantic Current feeding of 221
  - South Atlantic gyre, part of 189
  - South African rainfall, influence on 223
  - Walvis Ridge, flow over 188
- Benguela Sources and Transport (BEST)
  - Agulhas rings identified during **175**
  - Cape Basin cyclones identified during **175**
  - programme to investigate Agulhas ring fluxes 157
  - NOAA participating in 157
  - Sea Fisheries Research Institute participating in 157
  - Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution participating in 157
- Benguela upwelling system
  - Agulhas rings, interaction with 234
  - Lüderitz, central point of 190
  - model of 190
  - northern border of 190
  - South African rainfall related to 223
  - southernmost upwelling cell of 140, 190
  - upwelling eddies in 190
  - upwelling filaments in 190
  - vortex dipoles in 190
- berg winds (*see also* winds)
  - upwelling filaments, influence on 190
- Bering Sea
  - inter-ocean exchanges modelled for 197
- beta effect
  - role in Agulhas retroflexion 199
- biological impact
  - Agulhas filaments, of 132
  - Port Alfred upwelling cell, of 137
  - cold ridge on Agulhas Bank, of 141, 142
- birds
  - Subtropical Convergence, along 209
  - Agulhas rings, feeding at 15
- bottom topography (*see also* bathymetry)
  - Agulhas Bank, of **139**
  - South West Indian Ocean, of **6**, **25**, **31**, **34**
- bottom shelf water
  - Natal Bight, in 110, **111**
  - Agulhas Bank, on 135, 141, 142

- boundary current (*see* abyssal boundary current, deep boundary current)
- Brazil Current (southern)
- Agulhas rings reaching 187, 233
  - confluence with Falkland Current 8, 178
  - continental constraints on 151
  - publications on x
  - rings shed from 8, 162
  - sources of 8, 53
  - temperature–salinity characteristics of **179**
  - unique characteristics of 8
  - volume flux of 6, 8
  - western boundary current, as 8
- Brazil Current (northern) (*see also* Brazil (Current) ring)
- retroflection of 8, 155
  - rings shed from 8
  - vertical penetration of 8
  - volume transport of 8
- Brazil (Current) ring
- advection in South Atlantic gyre 178
  - age of 178
  - Cape Basin, found in **175**
  - dimensions of 8
  - temperature–salinity relations of 178, **179**
  - life-time, estimated, of 8
  - origin at Brazil–Falkland Current confluence 178
  - shedding frequency of 8
  - volume transport of 8
  - shedding trigger for 9
  - Subantarctic Mode Water in 178, **179**
- British Hydrographic Office
- study of surface currents at 54
- CFC
- in presumed Brazil rings 178
- CSIR (*see* Council for Scientific and Industrial Research)
- CTD (*see* Conductivity–Temperature–Depth instrument)
- CZCS (*see* Coastal Zone Color Scanner)
- Cape Agulhas
- coastal upwelling west of 139, 140
  - name, origin of 2
  - temperature section from 122, **123**
  - volume transport south of **215**
  - separating coast in upwelling and non-upwelling regimes 139
- Cape Amber (Cap d’Ambre)
- surface speeds past 57
  - volume transport past 60, 72
  - East Madagascar Current moving past 69
- Cape Basin
- Agulhas retroflection loop extending into 158
  - Agulhas rings, interaction amongst, in 233
  - Agulhas rings dissipating in **183**
  - Agulhas rings present in **173**, 173, **175**, 186
  - Agulhas rings splitting in **188**
  - Benguela Current originating in 189
  - cyclones in (*see also* Cape Basin cyclones) 173, 174, **175**
  - intermediate waters, sources of, in 190
  - model of water movement through 192
  - North Atlantic Deep Water movement through 32, **33**
  - Red Sea Water in 190
  - variability in **196**
  - volume transport across 192
- Cape Basin cyclones
- advection rates of 174, 177
  - Agulhas ring, attendant on 173, 174
  - azimuthal speeds of 177
  - comparable to cyclones at other locations 187
  - $\beta$ -plane influence on 174
  - continental shelf edge, generated at 175, 176
  - diameter of 177
  - floats in 187
  - kinetic energy of 177
  - lee eddies, from 174, 176
  - lifetimes of 177
  - mixing in 177
  - modelled 176
  - Natal Pulses, from 174
  - portrayal of **175**
  - tracks of 178
  - Walvis Ridge, crossing 177, 187
- Cape Hatteras
- Gulf Stream fully constituted at 8
- Cape of Good Hope Experiment (KAPEX)
- floats placed during 151, 173
  - RAFOS floats placed as part of 157
  - studying the Agulhas Current system 157, 173
  - studying Agulhas rings 173
- Cape Point
- coastal upwelling east of 140
  - coastal upwelling north of (*see also* Benguela upwelling system) 140
- Cape St Lucia (*see also* St Lucia upwelling cell)
- Agulhas Current characteristics at 96, 97
  - bathymetric similarity to south-eastern Madagascar, of 62
  - chlorophyll at 109
  - hydrographic sections south of 93
  - large Natal Pulse off 114
  - nutrient rich water off 109
  - plankton production at 109
  - siphonophores at 109
  - temperature–salinity relations near 109
  - upwelling at 109
  - volume transport off 100
- Cape St Marie (Cap Ste Marie)
- currents south of 64
- Cape Town
- Agulhas filaments south of 131, **132**
  - Agulhas Bank lee eddy south-west of **176**
  - Agulhas ring off **181**, 186
  - observational stations close to 2
  - upwelling at **159**
- Caretta caretta* (*see also* Loggerhead turtle)
- interaction with Agulhas Current 14



- Cargados Carojos shoals  
 – current shadow downstream of 47
- Central Water (*see also* South Indian Central Water)  
 – Agulhas Bank, on 136  
 – Agulhas retroflexion, in 164, 165  
 – formation of, in Indian Ocean 40  
 – Mozambique Channel, in 40  
 – northern Agulhas Current, in **106**, 106  
 – volume in South West Indian Ocean 27, **27**
- cetaceans (*see also* whales)  
 – Agulhas Current system, distribution influenced by 14  
 – Subtropical Convergence, at 209
- Chaetognaths (*see also* *Sagitta enflata*)  
 – Agulhas Current water, indicator species for 15
- Challenger* (vessel)  
 – making pioneering observations close to South Africa 2, 19
- Chlorophyll-*a*  
 – Angoche lee eddy, in 73  
 – Agulhas Current, on the inshore edge of the 139  
 – filaments of **60**, 65  
 – Madagascar, off south coast of **60**, **62**, 63, 65  
 – Mozambique Channel, in lee eddy in 73  
 – Natal Bight upwelling cell, in 109, **110**, 110  
 – Port Alfred upwelling cell, in 137  
 – seasonality, south-eastern Madagascar upwelling cell, in 63  
 – subsurface maximum **62**, 63  
 – Subtropical Convergence, at the 209, 224
- circulation (*see also* currents)  
 – continental shelf off south-eastern Africa, on 98, 101, 107, 108, 109, **112**, 145  
 – deep 34  
 – Indian Ocean, of **18**  
 – Natal Bight, over 109, 111, **112**  
 – South Indian Ocean, of **20**, **24**, **25**  
 – South West Indian Ocean, of 6, **34**
- Circumpolar Deep Water (*see also* Upper Circumpolar Deep Water; Lower Circumpolar Deep Water)  
 – Agulhas retroflexion, in **166**  
 – circulation in Madagascar basin 34  
 – circulation in Mascarene basin 34  
 – South West Indian Ocean, in 32
- climate  
 – fluctuations in global thermohaline cell, role of in 130  
 – upstream retroflexion, importance of, on 196  
 – southern Africa, of 11, 12, **13**, 14, 223
- climate change  
 – role of ocean 4
- clouds (*see also* cumulus clouds)  
 – formation over Agulhas Current 149, **150**, 150  
 – formation over Agulhas filaments 150, 192  
 – formation over Gulf Stream 149
- coastal counter current  
 – observations for 94, **94**, 98, **99**, 108, 112, 116
- coastal lee eddies (*see* lee eddies)
- coastal lows (*see* winds; waves)
- coastal upwelling (*see also* upwelling; upwelling cell)  
 – Agulhas Bank, along 139, 140, **142**  
 – Benguela regime, of 140  
 – Cape Agulhas, near 139, 140  
 – Cape Point, north of 140  
 – Cape Point, south of 140  
 – headlands of South Coast, at 140  
 – Natal Bight, in (*see* St Lucia upwelling cell)  
 – south-eastern Madagascar, off **61**, 62, **62**, 63  
 – west coast, along **6**, 154
- coastal winds (*see* winds)
- Coastal Zone Color Scanner (CZCS) (*see also* NIMBUS 7)  
 – use made of by South Africans 133
- cold ridge  
 – Agulhas Bank, on **140**, 141, **143**
- Commandant Robert Giraud* (vessel)  
 – research cruise by, in Mozambique Channel 71, **72**
- Comores  
 – East Madagascar moving past 69
- Comores Basin  
 – circulation in 71, **71**, 72  
 – modelled circulation for 70  
 – origin of Mozambique eddies in 77
- conductivity–temperature–depth instrument (CTD)  
 – Agulhas retroflexion, at **165**
- continental shelf  
 – Agulhas Current stability, influence on 6  
 – bottom water of 129  
 – circulation on 96, 142  
 – East Madagascar Current stability, influence on 60  
 – northern Agulhas Current, flow along 105, 106, 108  
 – sediments on 96, 121  
 – south-eastern Africa, off **93**, **96**, 107 ff., 138 ff.
- continental shelf currents (*see also* currents)  
 – Agulhas Bank, at edge of 96  
 – Agulhas Bank, over 142  
 – Durban, at 108  
 – Durban and Port Elizabeth, between 107, 108, 109, 111, **112**  
 – Natal Bight, in 108, **112**  
 – Port Edward, at 108
- continental slope  
 – Agulhas Current path, stabilising influence on 6  
 – south-eastern Africa, off 94, 95, 96, 121, 122, 130
- convective overturning  
 – Agulhas rings, in 180
- conveyor belt (*see* thermohaline circulation cell)
- copepoda  
 – distribution influenced by Agulhas Current system of 15  
 Council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR)  
 – airborne radiation thermometry, use of by 133  
 – commercialisation of 64, 103  
 – contributor to research on Agulhas Current, as 64  
 – drifters, deployment by 151  
 – IIOE, co-ordinating South African participation in 21  
 – marine pollution studies by 64  
 – National Aeronautical and Space Administration, collabo-

- rating with 152
- National Centre for Atmospheric Research, collaborating with 152
- National Physical Research Laboratory of 64, 133
- National Research Institute for Oceanology, establishing 64
- R. V. *Meiring Naudé*, owner of 64, 103, 157
- Satellite Remote Sensing Centre of 133
- counter current (*see also* onshore counter current)
  - at Durban 98
- Crozet Basin
  - bottom water, origin of, at 30
  - Antarctic Bottom Water movement in 32
  - circulation in 71
- Crozet Island
  - Antarctic Bottom Water flow of, past 32
  - volume transport between Durban and 215
- cumulus clouds (*see also* clouds)
  - Agulhas Current, formed over 149, **150**, 150
  - Agulhas filaments, formed over 150
- currents (*see also* current measurements; counter current; Agulhas Undercurrent; circulation; surface currents; continental shelf currents)
  - Agulhas Bank, on 145
  - Agulhas Current, speeds simulated for 203
  - Agulhas retroflection, in **158**
  - Agulhas Return Current, speeds of 213, 214, **214**, 218, **219**
  - Cape St Marie, south of 64
  - continental shelf, on 97
  - Durban, at **97**, **98**, **108**
  - Durban and Port Elizabeth, velocities, between 93, 108
  - greater Agulhas Current system, simulated for 203
  - Madagascar, south of **63**, 64
  - Natal, off 97, 97, **98**
  - Natal Bight, over the 111, **112**
  - northern Agulhas Current, for **94**, **97**, **98**, **101**, **108**
  - Port Edward, at **108**
  - Richards Bay, at **113**
  - South West Indian Ocean, seasonal variability in, for 102
  - variability of, in South West Indian Ocean **68**, 68
- current measurements
  - Agulhas Bank, on 145
  - Agulhas Current, in northern 92, **94**, 94, **95**, **97**, **98**, **108**, 157
  - Agulhas Current, in southern **153**, 204
  - Agulhas retroflection, in 152, 204
  - Agulhas Return Current, in 204, 213, 214, **214**
  - Agulhas rings, of 180, 186
  - Cape Basin, in **153**
  - Durban, at 108
  - East Madagascar Current, in 92
  - Mozambique Channel, in 157
  - Natal, off 149
  - Natal Pulse, in 114, 176
  - Port Alfred, at 108
  - Port Edward, at **95**, **97**, **98**, 108, 157
  - Richards Bay, at 108
  - shear edge eddies, in 131
  - South East Atlantic, in 157
- cyclonic eddy (*see* eddy)
  - South West Indian Ocean, of **31**
- deep basins
  - South West Indian Ocean, of **31**
- deep boundary current
  - along west coast of southern Africa 164
  - North Atlantic Deep Water in 164
- deep circulation
  - South West Indian Ocean, of 30, **31**, 32, **33**, **34**, 34
- deep water
  - South West Indian Ocean, volume of, in 27, **27**
- deep-sea eddy (*see* eddy)
  - special edition of, on KAPEX 157
- Delagoa Bight
  - lee eddy in 73, 79, **80**, 81
  - lee eddy, movement of, in 81
  - Delagoa Pulses, source of, in 116, 118
  - Mozambique eddies, influence of, on 79
  - upwelling cell in 79
- Delagoa Pulses
  - seen in satellite images 81, 116, 118
  - off the Natal Bight **119**
  - vertical sections across **119**
- Dermodochelys coriacea* (*see* leatherback turtles)
  - Agulhas Current, in southern 209
  - Subtropical Convergence, at 209
- dipoles (*see* vortex dipoles)
  - making pioneering observations near South Africa 2
- Discovery* (vessel)
  - making pioneering observations near South Africa 2
- dissolved oxygen content (*see* oxygen content)
  - dissolved oxygen minimum layer (*see* oxygen minimum layer)
  - dissolved oxygen section (*see* oxygen section)
- Division for Earth, Marine and Atmospheric Science and Technology (EMATEK)
  - establishment of 64
- Doholium denticulatum* (pelagic tunicate)
  - Agulhas Current water, indicator species for, as 15
- Drake Passage
  - Antarctic Intermediate Water from 192
  - heat fluxes through 196
  - inter-ocean exchanges modelled for 197
  - water from 198
- drift
  - Agulhas rings, of 186, 187, **188**, **206**
- drift bottles, use of 4
- drifters
  - Agulhas Current at Durban, offshore of 98, 120, **211**
  - Agulhas Current system, use in studying 104, 152
  - Agulhas Current, southern, in 158, **212**
  - Agulhas eddy, in 227
  - Agulhas Plateau, over 152, 211, **212**
  - Agulhas retroflection region, in the 158, 204

- Agulhas Return Current, in 204, 209, 211, **212**, **213**, 220, **229**
- Durban eddy, in **112**
- East Madagascar Current, in 67, 152
- FGGE, placed during 152
- GARP, placed during 152
- Indian Mid-Ocean Ridge, over **212**
- Madagascar, east of, from 68
- Madagascar Ridge, over **212**
- Mozambique Channel, in 81
- Mozambique eddy, in 119
- Mozambique Plateau, moored on 152
- Mozambique Plateau, moving over **212**
- northern Agulhas Current, in 98, 104
- pioneering studies using 152
- South West Indian Ocean subgyre, in 84, 86
- southern Agulhas Current, in 204
- Southern Ocean, in 152
- Subtropical Convergence, at 224
- upstream retroflection, at 196
- drifting buoys (*see* drifters)
- dunes
  - shelf sediments, in 96, **96**
- Durban
  - CSIR research establishment, location of, at 64, 103, 133, 151, 157
  - current measurements at 96, **97**
  - current speeds at 96, **97**, **99**
  - drifters at 112, 120
  - hydrographic surveys south of 122, **123**
  - hydrographic section across Agulhas Current at 122, **123**
  - inshore counter current off 98, **99**
  - lee eddy off 98, **99**, 108, 109, **111**, 111, 137
  - location of **6**
  - nitrate values off **111**
  - recurrent eddy off 98, **99**, **111**
  - temperature section at **86**, **99**
  - temperature–salinity relationship of water at **99**, **106**
  - upwelling filament off 110
  - volume transport off 100
- ECMWF (*see* European Centre for Medium-Range Prediction)
- EMATEK (*see* Division for Earth, Marine and Atmospheric Science and Technology)
- ENSO (*see* El Niño- Southern Oscillation)
- ERS 1 (satellite)
  - model assimilation of altimeter data from 203
- early portrayals
  - sources to the Agulhas Current, of 53, 54, **54**, 55, **55**
  - South Equatorial Current, of **54**, **55**, 55
- East African Coastal Current (*see also* East African Current)
  - model simulation of 47
  - seasonal variability of 91
  - surface drift of 54
- East African Current (*see also* East African Coastal Current)
  - depth of 42, **43**
  - formed by East Madagascar Current 69
  - seasonal variability of 55
  - speed of **43**, 69
  - surface speeds of **43**
  - vertical profiles for **43**
  - volume transport of 69
  - width of 69
- East Australian Current
  - meridional extent of 8
  - publications on x
  - ring formation by 8, 162
  - speeds of 8
  - Tasman Front, flow along (*see also* Tasman Front) 8
- East London
  - shelf/current arrangement at **134**
  - temperature sections at **134**
  - upwelling cell downstream of (*see* Port Alfred upwelling cell)
- East Madagascar Current
  - characteristics of 57
  - Antarctic Intermediate Water in 44, 61
  - bifurcation of 57
  - bifurcation of northern branch of 69
  - chlorophyll at **61**
  - Comores, flow past, of 69, 72
  - conceptual portrayal of **6**
  - current measurements in 92
  - deep sea eddies, impact of, on 60
  - depth of **43**, 60, 61
  - drifters in 67, 151
  - early nomenclature for 53
  - eddies, impact on 60
  - eddies generated by 65, 66, **66**, 88, 133
  - eddies generated by, in model 60
  - eddy kinetic energy for **92**
  - filaments from 65
  - float tracks in 64
  - kinetic energy for 91, **92**
  - knowledge, lack of, on 235
  - model simulation of 47, 67
  - model simulation of retroflection of 66, **66**
  - modelled as inertial jet 67
  - need for more information on 233
  - northern branch of 60, 72
  - northern branch, modelled, of **65**
  - nutrients, enhanced in associated upwelling cell of 63
  - point of divergence between branches of 57, 58
  - retroflection of 5, **6**, **60**, 65, 66
  - retroflection of, modelled 67
  - retroflection discovered for 133
  - rings of **6**
  - satellite studies of 133
  - seasonal variations in 58, 92
  - source for Agulhas Current, as 5
  - sources of 57
  - southern branch of **6**, 60, 64
  - speeds of 8, **43**, 57, 60, **60**, 61

- Subtropical Surface Water in 61
- surface speeds of 55, **55**, 57
- temperature–salinity relationships for 61
- Tropical Surface Water of 44, 61
- upwelling associated with **60**, 62, 63, 132
- velocity, downstream increase of 58
- vertical penetration of 8, **43**
- vertical profiles for **43**
- volume flux of 8, 57, 58, 72
- volume transport modelled for **48**
- volume transport variations of 60
- vortex dipoles of 81, **89**, 89
- western boundary current, as 5
- width of 8, 60, **60**, 61
- East Madagascar Undercurrent
  - depth of 69
  - volume transports of 69
  - width of 69
- eastern boundary current
  - Australia, off 17
- eddy (*see also* lee eddy; shear edge eddy; eddy kinetic energy)
  - Agulhas Current 198
  - Agulhas Current, adsorption onto **116**, 118
  - Agulhas Current, spun off seaward side of 196
  - Agulhas Plateau, at the 211, **212**, **226**, **227**
  - Agulhas retroflexion, at the **226**, **227**
  - Agulhas retroflexion, cyclonic, at the (*see* Cape Basin cyclones)
  - Agulhas Return Current, at the 211, **212**, 225, **226**, **227**
  - Agulhas Return Current, modelled at 225
  - Agulhas ring, attendant on (*see* Cape Basin cyclones)
  - Benguela upwelling front, in 190
  - Durban, off 98, **99**, 108, 109, **111**, 111, 137
  - East Madagascar Current, generated by 65, 66, **66**, 88
  - East Madagascar Current, impact on 60
  - East Madagascar Current, simulated for 60
  - heat loss from 198
  - intra-thermocline 89, **90**
  - kinetic energy of 91, **92**
  - Madagascar, from east of 60, **88**
  - movement studied by altimetry 88, **88**
  - Mozambique Basin, in 88, 89, **89**, 118
  - Mozambique Channel, from 76, 77, **77**, **78**, 88, **88**, 118
  - Mozambique Channel, in **65**, 65, 81, 88, **88**
  - Mozambique Plateau, at 81, 82, 86, **87**, 118
  - Natal Basin, in 68, 82, **88**, 89, **89**, 118
  - Natal Bight, over 111, **112**
  - Natal Pulse, in 114, 116, 176
  - shelf interaction, with 65
  - South Atlantic Current, shed from 187
  - South West Indian Ocean, in **86**
  - Subtropical Convergence, at the 156, 221, **222**, 225, **226**, **227**, **228**
  - Subtropical Convergence, formation at the 88, 118, 187, 198, 221, **222**, 225, **226**, **227**, **230**
  - Subtropical Convergence, simulation of formation at the **230**
  - upwelling in 190
- eddy kinetic energy
  - Agulhas Current, for 91, **92**, 152, **153**
  - Agulhas Current, modelled in southern **153**
  - Agulhas Current system, of, modelled for 67, **75**
  - Agulhas retroflexion, at 91, **92**, 151, 152
  - Agulhas Return Current, at 91, **92**
  - Cape Basin, for **153**
  - East Madagascar Current, at **92**
  - Gulf Stream, for 152
  - Kuroshio, for 152
  - Mozambique Channel, in **92**
  - South West Indian Ocean, for **92**
- Ekman transport
  - Port Alfred upwelling cell, at 138
  - South West Indian Ocean, over 23
- Ekman veering
  - Agulhas Current, under 110, 131, 132, 138
- El Niño (*see also* El Niño–Southern Oscillation)
  - influence on East Madagascar Current dipoles 89
- El Niño–Southern Oscillation (ENSO)
  - influence on Agulhas ring shedding 160
- Enderby Basin
  - Antarctic Bottom Water, as origin of 32
- Environmentek
  - establishment of 64
- Eole (satellite)
  - drifter tracking by 152
- Equatorial Counter Current
  - location of 17, **18**
  - seasonality of 17
- Equatorial Indian Ocean Water
  - Mozambique Channel, in **82**, 82, 83
- Erica Seamount
  - Agulhas rings, splitting of, at 180, 189, **189**
- Europa Island
  - frigate birds from 78
- European Centre for Medium-Range Prediction (ECMWF)
  - model for heat transfer from Agulhas Current by 149
- FGGE (*see* First Global GARP Experiment)
- FRAM (*see* Fine Resolution Antarctic Model)
- Falkland Current
  - Brazil Current, confluence with 8
  - rings shed from 178
- False Bay
  - thermal front at 140
  - upwelling water moving past 140
  - water temperature of 4, 5
- filaments (*see also* upwelling filaments; Agulhas filament)
  - Agulhas rings, associated with 184, **184**, 190, **191**
  - off western Madagascar **65**
  - of East Madagascar Current 65
- Fine Resolution Antarctic Model (FRAM)
  - Agulhas Return Current, modelling by, for 230
  - Agulhas ring trajectory, modelled by, for 205, **206**
  - Agulhas rings, simulation of, by 204, 205, **205**



- South West Indian Ocean circulation, modelled with 47, 48, 49, **50**
- Subtropical Convergence simulated by **205**
- Subtropical Convergence, simulation of eddy formation at, by **230**, 230
- First Global GARP Experiment (FGGE) (*see also* drifters; GARP)
  - buoys forming part of 152
  - drift tracks of buoys forming part of **229**
- fish stocks
  - off eastern Madagascar 63
- floats
  - Agulhas Bank, off 127, 128
  - Agulhas Current, off Durban, in 127, 151
  - Agulhas Return Current, in 211, **212**
  - Agulhas ring, in 185, 186, 234
  - Benguela Current, in 187
  - East Madagascar Current, in 64
  - KAPEX, placed during
  - lee eddy, in 128
  - Natal Pulse, in 114, 115, 176
  - profiling, Argo 152
  - shear edge eddies, in 128
  - Walvis Ridge, crossing 187, 192
- Florida
  - Gulf Stream, downstream of 53
- Florida Current
  - Gulf Stream, as precursor to (*see also* Gulf Stream) 8
- Florida Straits 8
- flotsam
  - drift of 68
- Fray* (vessel)
  - current measurements from 94
- FRAM (*see also* Fine Resolution Antarctic Model)
  - modelling the South West Indian Ocean with 47, 48, **49**, **50**
  - modelling the South West Indian Ocean subgyre using 48, **49**
- “freak waves” (*see* waves)
- fronts (*see* by name of individual fronts)
  
- GARP (*see* Global Atmospheric Research Programme)
- GCM (*see* global circulation model)
- GEK (*see* geomagnetic electrokinetograph)
- Gauss* (vessel)
  - making pioneering measurements near South Africa 2
- Gazelle* (vessel)
  - making pioneering measurements near South Africa 2
- geomagnetic electrokinetograph (GEK)
  - measurements by 70, **71**
- Geosat (satellite)
  - Agulhas rings, used to study **161**, **188**
  - altimeter data of, assimilated in model 203
  - eddy kinetic energy according to 154
  - observations south of Madagascar by 68
- geostrophic velocity
  - South West Indian Ocean circulation, components of, for 20, 43
- German Hydrographic Office
  - surface current atlas drawn up by 23
- German research
  - Second World War, before 19
  - influence of 19
- “giant waves” (*see* waves)
- Global Atmospheric Research Programme (GARP)
  - drifters placed during 152
- global circulation model (GCM) (*see also* model)
  - simulating Agulhas retroflexion with 199, 204
  - simulating variability along Agulhas Return Current using 217
- global thermohaline circulation (cell) (*see also* thermohaline circulation cell)
  - Agulhas Current’s role in 191
  - modelling of 9
- Gouriqua (*see* Mossel Bay)
- Grand Banks
  - Gulf Stream leaves the shelf edge at 8
- Gulf of Mexico 8, 53
- Gulf Stream
  - atmospheric circulation cells over 149
  - cloud formation over 12
  - cold-core rings, shedding of, by 8
  - compared to Agulhas Current 2
  - continental constraints on 151
  - eddies, absorption of, by 118
  - eddy kinetic energy for 152
  - global thermohaline circulation, contribution to 10
  - growth in knowledge on ix, x
  - heat fluxes to atmosphere from 13
  - kinetic energy of **156**, 156
  - loop occlusion in 8
  - meandering of 8, 94, 131
  - origin of 8
  - plumes associated with 131
  - publication on x
  - ring formation by 159
  - shear edge disturbances on 100, 131
  - sources of 8, 53
  - speed of 8
  - storms, intensity of, influence on 13
  - text book treatment of ix
  - trajectory of 8
  - undercurrent of 95
  - upwelling at 122, 144
  - volume flux of 8
  - warm-core rings, shedding of, by 8
  - width of 8
- H. M. S. Tiger (*see* Tiger)
- Hartebeesthoek
  - Satellite Remote Sensing Centre located at 133
- heat fluxes (*see also* heat loss)
  - Agulhas Current, to atmosphere from southern 9, 12, 13
  - Agulhas filaments, by 192

- Agulhas retroflection, to atmosphere from 12, 13, 151, 185, 223
- Agulhas rings, by 193, 194
- Atlantic Ocean, across line of latitude in 196, 197
- Drake Passage, through the 196
- inter-ocean, by Agulhas rings 193
- model, simulated in 196
- Port Alfred upwelling cell, to atmosphere at 149
- South Atlantic subtropical gyre, modelled for 197
- Southern Ocean, from 196
- Southern Ocean, to, from Agulhas system 199
- Heat loss to atmosphere
  - Agulhas Current, over southern 149
  - Agulhas eddies, by 12, 13, 198
  - Agulhas filaments, from 192
  - Agulhas retroflection, at 180, 185
  - Agulhas rings, from 162, 180, 185
  - Port Alfred upwelling cell, at 149
- Heezen Ridge
  - obstruction to Agulhas retroflection loop, as 158
- hydrographic section
  - Agulhas Bank, across **129, 140, 141, 144, 145, 147**
  - Agulhas Bank, along edge of **167**
  - Agulhas Bank lee eddy, across **176**
  - Agulhas Bight, at **123, 123**
  - Agulhas Current, across northern 93, 122, **123**
  - Agulhas Current, across southern 122, 123, **123, 134, 213, 213, 224**
  - Agulhas Current at Cape Agulhas, across 122, **123**
  - Agulhas Current at Durban, across 122, **123**
  - Agulhas Current at East London, across **134**
  - Agulhas Current at Port Alfred **134**
  - Agulhas Current at Port Elizabeth, across 122, **123, 134**
  - Agulhas Current at Port St Johns, across 122, **123**
  - Agulhas Current meander, across **115, 138**
  - Agulhas eddy, across **163, 222**
  - Agulhas filament, across **132, 132**
  - Agulhas Front, across 220, **222, 224**
  - Agulhas Plateau, near **213, 213**
  - Agulhas retroflection, across **163, 169**
  - Agulhas Return Current, across **163, 209, 213, 213, 216, 218, 224, 228**
  - Agulhas ring, across **163, 172, 181, 182, 186**
  - Algoa Bay, at **134, 138**
  - Cape St Lucia, south of 93
  - continental shelf north-east of Port Elizabeth, across **134**
  - East London, at **134**
  - Natal Bight, along 110, **111**
  - Natal Pulse, across **138, 138**
  - Port Alfred, at 133, **134, 135, 138**
  - Port Alfred upwelling cell, across 133, **134, 135, 138, 138**
  - Port Elizabeth, north of 93, **134**
  - shear edge eddy and plume, across 129, **129**
  - South Indian Ocean, across **25, 26, 26**
  - southern Agulhas Current, across **228**
  - Subantarctic Front, across **224**
  - Subtropical Convergence, across **182, 216, 220, 222, 224**
  - Subtropical Convergence eddy, across **228**
- IGY (*see* International Geophysical Year)
- IIOE (*see* International Indian Ocean Expedition)
- IOC (*see* Intergovernmental Oceanographic Commission)
- ichthyo-ecology
  - Agulhas Bank, influence of, on 121
- Indian Central Water
  - South West Indian Ocean, in 41
  - temperature-salinity characteristics of 41
- Indian Equatorial Water
  - Indian Ocean, in 40
- Indian Ocean
  - Antarctic Intermediate Water in **35, 35**
  - circulation of, according to ships' drift **18, 23, 53**
  - Indian Equatorial Water in 40
  - Indonesian Intermediate Water in **35, 35**
  - mesoscale variability in 21
  - mid-ocean front in 17
  - Red Sea Water in **35**
  - sea surface temperature anomalies in 11
  - rainfall, influence on 11
  - surface circulation of 17, **18, 18, 19**
- Indian Deep Water
  - Amirante Passage, movement through 34
  - South West Indian Ocean, in the **28, 29**
  - Mozambique Channel, flow into 32
  - temperature–oxygen relationships of in western Indian Ocean **29**
  - temperature–salinity relationships of in western Indian Ocean **28**
- Indian Equatorial Water
  - location of 40
- Indian Mid-ocean Ridge
  - location of **6, 25, 31**
- Indian Ocean Central Water
  - Agulhas Bank, on **146**
- Indian Ocean Dipole
  - influence on East Madagascar Current dipole shedding 89
  - influence on ring shedding 160
- Indian Tropical Surface Water
  - Agulhas Bank, on **146**
- Indonesian Intermediate Water
  - Indian Ocean, in 35
  - South West Indian Ocean, in 35
- Indonesian throughflow
  - Antarctic Intermediate Water from 192
  - influence on inter-ocean exchange south of Africa 233
- inertial jet
  - Agulhas Current, modelling, as 199, **200**
  - Agulhas retroflection, modelling, as 199, **200**
  - Agulhas Return Current, model of 228, 229, **229**
  - East Madagascar Current, modelling, as 67
- inertial motion
  - KwaZulu-Natal, on continental shelf off 108
  - Agulhas Bank, on 145, **148**
- inshore counter current (*see also* counter current)
  - Durban, off 98, **99**
  - Agulhas Current, to 116

*Institut für Meereskunde*

- Berlin, in 19, 54
- Kiel, in 19

## inter-decadal changes

- data sets on winds for 40

## Intergovernmental Oceanographic Commission (IOC)

- establishment of 21

## internal tides

- Agulhas Bank, at the 145

## International Geophysical Year (IGY)

- first global geophysical programme, as 21

## International Indian Ocean Expedition (IIOE)

- Agulhas Current research, impact on, of 21, 157
- atlas based on 56, **56**
- data, use of, from 57, 84, 156

## inter-ocean exchange

- Agulhas Bank water, by 191
- Agulhas filaments, by 192, 193
- Agulhas retroflection, at 151
- Agulhas rings, by 191, 192, 193, 194
- Antarctic Intermediate Water, by 192
- biogeographical patterns, role in 234
- biota, of 234
- direct leakage, by 191, 192
- flux between Indian and Atlantic, estimates of direct, by 191, 192
- heat fluxes of 193, 194, 234
- models of **195**, 197
- role in climate in 151
- salt fluxes of 193, 194, 324
- volume fluxes of 193

inter-ocean leakage (*see* inter-ocean exchange)

## intra-thermocline eddy

- depth of 89, **90**
- diameter of 89
- found east of Madagascar 89, **90**
- speeds of 89
- temperature–salinity characteristics of 89, **90**

## inverted echo-sounders

- monitoring Agulhas ring movement by 162, 186, 192

KAPEX (*see* Cape of Good Hope Experiment)KNMI (*see* Koninklijk Nederlandsch Meteorologisch Instituut)

## Kalman filter

- used to assimilate data into model 203

## Kelvin waves

- propagation of Agulhas Current anomalies into Atlantic Ocean by 198

## Kerguelen Plateau

- Agulhas Return Current, as termination of 209
- Antarctic Bottom Water, flow of, past 32

## kinetic energy

- Agulhas Current, for **75**, 91, **92**, **156**
- Agulhas retroflection, at **75**, 91, **92**, 152, **156**
- Agulhas Return Current, for **75**, 91, **92**
- Agulhas rings, of 171, 174, 194

- East Madagascar Current, for **75**, 91, **92**

- Gulf Stream, of **156**

- Kuroshio, of **156**

- Mozambique Current, for **75**, 91, **92**

- New England seamounts, off 156

- South West Indian Ocean, of **75**, **92**

*Knorr* (vessel)

- used for Agulhas Retroflection Cruise 157

*Koninklijk Nederlandsch Meteorologisch Instituut* (KNMI)

- early investigation on Agulhas Current at 1

- establishment of 225

## Kuroshio

- characteristics, unique, of 8
- continental constraints of 151
- eddy absorption by 118
- eddy kinetic energy for 152
- heat fluxes from 13
- kinetic energy of **156**, 156
- knowledge, growth in, on x
- meanderings of 8, 94
- origin of 8
- shear edge disturbances on 100, 131
- speed of 8
- trajectory of 8
- undercurrent of 95
- volume transport of 8
- width of 8

LOCO (*see* Long Term Ocean Climate Observations)

## Labrador Sea

- North Atlantic Deep Water, origin of, in 9

Lagrangian drifters (*see* drifters)

## Lamont-Doherty Geological Observatory

- source of Agulhas Retroflection Cruise, as 157

land–sea breeze (*see also* winds)

- KwaZulu-Natal coast, off 108

leakage (*see also* inter-ocean exchange)

- Agulhas Bank water, by 191
- Agulhas Current water, of 191
- Agulhas Return Current leakage, from 216, 217, **217**
- Agulhas rings, by 191, 192, 193, 194
- Antarctic Intermediate Water, by 192
- Subantarctic Water, across Subtropical Convergence, of 157

leatherback turtles (*Dermochelys coriacea*) (*see also* marine turtles)

- Agulhas Current system, interacting with 14

lee eddy (*see also* eddy)

- Agulhas Bank, off 127, **128**, 146, 158, 174, **176**, 176, 177
- Angoche, at 73, **79**
- Cape Basin, forming cyclonic eddies in 174
- Delagoa Bight, in 73, 79, **80**, 81
- Durban, off 98, **99**, 108, 109, **111**, **112**, 138
- floats in 128
- nutrients, enhanced, in 78
- Maputo, at 73
- model of **176**, 176

- Mozambique, off 73
- Mozambique Channel, in 73, 78
- Mozambique Current, associated with 73, 78
- Natal Bight, over 79, 111, **112**
- life-time
  - assumed Brazil ring, estimated for 178
  - Agulhas rings, of 180
- loggerhead turtles (*Caretta caretta*) (*see also* marine turtles)
  - Agulhas Current system, interacting with 14
- Long Term Ocean Climate Observations (LOCO)
  - in Mozambique Channel 157
- Lower Circumpolar Deep Water
  - temperature-oxygen relationships, in western Indian Ocean, of **29**
  - Agulhas retroflexion, in **166**
- low-pressure cells (*see* winds)
- Lüderitz
  - Benguela upwelling system, as central point to 190
- Luzon
  - Kuroshio, as start of 8
- MARE (*see* Mixing in Agulhas Rings Experiment)
- Madagascar
  - Agulhas Return Current south of 214, 215
  - cruises south of, on research vessel *Pelagia* 157
  - currents simulated around 58, **59**
  - currents south of **63**, 64
  - currents west of **72**, **71**, 73, 81
  - deep western boundary current off 32
  - eddies west of 81
  - influence on Agulhas Current system by 9
  - intra-thermocline eddies west of 89, **90**
  - North Atlantic Deep Water, north of 32
  - Subantarctic Front south of 222
  - Subtropical Convergence south of 222
  - upwelling cell off 62, **62**, 63
  - volume flux south of 68
- Madagascar Basin
  - Circumpolar Deep Water, circulation of, in 34
- Madagascar Ridge
  - Antarctic Intermediate Water, constrained by 84
  - drifter tracks, influence on **212**
  - model simulated variability, as boundary to 47
  - northward currents at 220
  - portrayal of **6**
  - sub-gyre west of (*see* South West Indian Ocean sub-gyre)
- Madagascar upwelling cell (*see* East Madagascar Current; upwelling; upwelling cell; upwelling filament)
- Maputo
  - Mozambique Current at 69
  - lee eddy at 73
  - poleward flow off 81
- marine boundary layer
  - southern Agulhas Current, over 149
- marine pollution
  - CSIR, investigations by 64
  - marine turtles (*see also* leatherback turtles; loggerhead turtles)
    - Agulhas Current system, affected by 14
- Mascarene Basin
  - Antarctic Bottom Water movement through 30, 32
  - Circumpolar Deep Water circulation in 34
- Mascarene Plateau
  - effect on South Equatorial Current, of 19
- mass transport function (*see* volume transport)
- Mauritius
  - cruises by research vessel *Meiring Naudé* to 103
- meanders
  - Agulhas Current, of 92, 93, 125, **126**, 126
  - Agulhas Current, on northern 92, 93
  - Agulhas Current, on southern 125, **126**, 126
  - Agulhas Return Current, of 160, 210, **210**, 210, 211, **211**, **225**, **229**
  - bottom topography, caused by 160, 210, **210**, 210, 211, **211**, **225**, **229**
  - Gulf Stream, on 8, 94, 131
  - Kuroshio, on 8, 94
  - solitary (*see* Natal Pulse)
- Meiring Naudé* (vessel)
  - crew of 103
  - cruises on 103, 157
  - description of 103
  - equipment on 103
  - ownership of 64, 103
  - portrayal of **103**
  - sale of 64, 103
- mesoscale variability (*see* variability)
- Meteor* (vessel)
  - pioneering observations by 2, 19
- METEOSAT (satellite)
  - Agulhas Current, use in studying 133,
  - Agulhas retroflexion, images for, from **153**, **160**
  - Agulhas rings, images for, from **153**, 171
  - images from **132**
- mixed layer
  - Agulhas Bank, over 140, **141**, 143
  - South West Indian Ocean, in 44, **45**
- Mixing in Agulhas Rings Experiment (MARE)
  - studying Agulhas rings as part of 157
- model (*see also* inertial jet; global circulation model)
  - Agulhas Bank, of circulation on 142
  - Agulhas Current, of eddy kinetic energy in 75
  - Agulhas Current, of northern 94, 95, 102, 115, 119, 120
  - Agulhas Current, of southern 125, 127, 142, 144, 149
  - Agulhas Current as inertial jet, of 94, 120
  - Agulhas Current retroflexion, of 47, 151, 154, 199
  - Agulhas Current system, of greater **49**
  - Agulhas Current volume flux, of 47, **48**
  - Agulhas Bank lee eddy, of 176
  - Agulhas Current system, biology of 201
  - Agulhas Front, of 218
  - Agulhas retroflexion, of **201**, **202**, **204**, **205**



- Agulhas retroflection, of eddy kinetic energy at 154
- Agulhas Return Current, of 46, **202**, **204**, 218, 225, 228, 229, **229**, 230
- Agulhas Return Current, of eddy kinetic energy at 225, 230
- Agulhas rings, of 46, 182, 184, **184**, **202**, 205, **205**
- Agulhas rings, shedding of, of 48, **201**, **202**, **204**, 204, **205**
- Agulhas ring dissipation, of 182, 184, **184**, 185, **185**, 189, 205
- Agulhas ring drifts, of 187, 188, 189, **206**
- Agulhas ring interaction with Walvis Ridge, of 188
- Agulhas ring shedding, of 48, **201**, **202**, **204**, 204, **205**
- Agulhas Undercurrent, of 95
- altimetric data assimilated by 199
- Antarctic Intermediate Water movement, of 48
- Atlantic Ocean, of heat transport in 196, 205
- Benguela Current, of 202
- Benguela upwelling system, of 190
- Cape Basin, sources of water moving through 192
- Comores Basin, circulation in 70
- data assimilation with 199, 203, **204**
- East African Coastal Current, simulation of 47
- East Madagascar Current, of 47, 60, 65
- East Madagascar Current, of volume flux of **48**
- East Madagascar Current, of 66, **66**, 67
- East Madagascar Current retroflection, of 67
- eddy kinetic energy, of distribution of 67, **75**, **153**
- eddy variability, of 75
- ensemble Kalman filter, use of, in 203
- global circulation, of (*see* global circulation model)
- global thermohaline circulation, of 204
- heat fluxes, of 196
- inertial jet, of Agulhas retroflection as 199, **200**
- inter-ocean exchanges, of **195**, 197
- inverse 196
- lee eddy off Agulhas Bank, of **176**, 176
- meridional heat flux simulated by 196, 205
- momentum flux in 200
- Mozambique Channel throughflow, of 47
- Mozambique Channel, variability in, of 47, 66, **66**, 70, **75**
- Mozambique Current, volume flux of **48**
- Mozambique eddies, of 66, **66**, 75, 78
- Natal Pulse in 176
- North Atlantic Deep Water in 48, **198**, 198
- North Madagascar Current, volume flux of **48**
- OCCAM, by 58
- Princeton Ocean 200
- seasonal forcing of South Indian Ocean, of 47
- shear edge eddies at Agulhas Bank, of 128
- Somali Current, of seasonality of 70
- South Atlantic, of heat and salt fluxes of 197
- South Atlantic, of heat and volume fluxes of 197
- South Equatorial Current, simulation of 47
- South Indian Ocean Current, simulation of 46, 230
- South West Indian Ocean, of movements in 46, 47, 48, **49**
- South West Indian Ocean subgyre, of **49**
- Subtropical Convergence, of 47, **202**
- Subtropical Convergence, of eddy shedding at 48, **230**, 230
- Subtropical Convergence, of phytoplankton blooms at 224
- Subtropical Surface Water penetration at Agulhas retroflection, of 164
- using data assimilation in 192
- viscous stress curl, incorporating 200
- West Indian Ocean, of currents in the **66**, **75**
- wind driven 199
- MODIS (satellite)
  - image from **61**
- moisture flux
  - from Agulhas Current termination 151
- momentum flux
  - ring shedding, as a cause for 200
- monsoon (*see also* winds)
  - circulation of **18**
  - ocean circulation due to **18**, 92
  - winds of 8, 17
  - “monster waves” (*see* waves)
- Mossel Bay
  - surface temperatures at 141, **142**
  - wind speeds at 141, **142**
- Möwe* (vessel)
  - early investigations by 2
- Mozambique Basin
  - Antarctic Bottom Water in 32
  - eddies in 89, **89**, 118
  - North Atlantic Deep Water in 32
- Mozambique Channel
  - Antarctic Intermediate Water in 37, **37**, **82**, 82, **83**, 83
  - birds feeding in 78
  - circulation in 69, 71, **71**, **72**, 73, **73**, **74**
  - circulation in, according to ships’ drift 53
  - cruises by research vessel *Meiring Naudé* to 103
  - cruises by research vessel *Pelagia* in 157
  - current dynamics, need for more information on 233
  - current meter array in 157
  - currents in 5, **71**, 72, 73, **73**, **74**, 74
  - currents simulated for **66**
  - current variability in **68**, 68
  - drifters in 81
  - eddies emerging from 88, **88**, 118
  - eddies in 5, **65**, 81, 88, **88**
  - eddies simulated in 66, **66**, 70
  - Equatorial Indian Ocean Water in **82**, 82, 83
  - flow into northern mouth of **70**, **71**, **72**, 72
  - flow out of southern mouth of **70**, **72**, 80
  - flow through 42, **42**, **70**, **71**, **72**
  - hydrographic observations, lack of, for 235, 236
  - Indian Deep Water in 32
  - inflow, width of, of 72
  - lee eddies in 73, 78, **79**, **80**
  - kinetic energy values for **75**, 91, **92**
  - knowledge, growth in, of 235
  - mesoscale variability in **75**

- mixed layer depth in 44, **45**
- modelling of flow in 69, 70
- North Indian Central Water in 40
- North Indian Deep Water in **82, 83**
- North Atlantic Deep Water in 32, **82, 83**
- Red Sea Water in 30, 37, 40, 107, 166
- shelf circulation of 73
- simulated volume flux for 69, 70
- seasonality in 92
- southern mouth, flow through **70, 72, 80**
- southern mouth, volume flux through 80, 81
- Subtropical South Indian Ocean Water in **82, 83**
- surface drift of waters in 54
- temperature–oxygen relationships of waters in **82**
- temperature–salinity relationships of waters in **82, 82**
- throughflow modelled for 47
- Tropical Surface Water flowing through 103, 106, 107
- variability in, according to altimetry 25, 75, **75, 78, 78**
- vertical temperature structure in 44, **45**
- volume flux into 72
- volume transport through 42, **42**
- water mass characteristics in (*see* temperature-salinity relationships of waters in)
- wind steadiness over 22
- Mozambique Current (*see also* Mozambique Undercurrent)
  - Agulhas Current, continuity with 5
  - Agulhas Current, volume flux contribution to, by **24, 85**
  - depth of **43**
  - lee eddies associated with 73
  - location of 74
  - model simulation of 47, 66, **66, 88**
  - source for Agulhas Current, as 5
  - speeds in **43, 74**
  - surface drift of 54
  - seasonality, surface drift of, of 55, 91
  - seasonality, modelled for 91
  - Tropical Surface Water, as source of 77, 102, 103
  - vertical profiles for **43**
  - variability at 75, **75, 78, 78**
  - volume transport of 75
  - volume transport model simulation for **48**
- Mozambique eddies
  - Antarctic Intermediate Water in 77
  - birds feeding from 78
  - current measurements of **76, 76**
  - Delagoa Bight eddy, influence on 79
  - depth of 77
  - diameters of 76
  - drifter in 78, **78, 119**
  - energy increase in 77
  - frequency of formation of 77
  - Red Sea Water in 37, **38, 40**
  - mixing in 77
  - model simulations of 66, **66, 75**
  - origin of 77
  - speeds of 76
  - Red Sea Water in 77
  - Subtropical Surface Water in 77
  - trajectories of **77, 77, 78, 88, 88**
  - translation speed of 76, **88**
  - Tropical Surface Water in 77
  - volume transport by 76
- Mozambique Plateau (previously Mozambique Ridge)
  - Agulhas Return Current crossing 86
  - Antarctic Water movement past 32
  - buoy moored on 152
  - deep-sea eddies at 65, 81, 82, 86, **87, 87, 89, 116, 118**
  - deflection caused by 7, 87
  - drifters at **212**
  - Delagoa Pulses dissipating over 81
  - drifter tracks, influence on 211, **212, 228, 229**
  - eddy movement, influence on 65, 87
  - extension of 7
  - hypothesised current along 88
  - “Mozambique Ridge Current” at 88
  - planetary type wave at 220
  - “Mozambique Ridge Current”
    - concept of 88
- Mozambique Undercurrent (*see also* Mozambique Current)
  - Antarctic Intermediate Water, in 37, 78
  - carrying water equatorward 78
  - depth of 78
  - North Atlantic Deep Water in 78
  - speed of 78
- myctophids
  - Agulhas Current, distribution influenced by 15
- NASA (*see* National Aeronautical and Space Administration)
- NCAR (*see* National Centre for Atmospheric Research)
- NCEP (*see* National Centers for Medium-Range Prediction)
- NOAA (*see also* NOAA satellite) (*see* National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration)
- NPRL (*see* National Physical Research Laboratory)
- NRIO (*see* National Research Institute for Oceanology)
- NIMBUS VI (satellite)
  - Coastal Zone Color Scanner of 133
  - relayed moored buoy data by 152
- NOAA (satellite)
  - Agulhas Current, use of in studying **100, 133, 161**
  - Agulhas retroflexion, image of, from 158, **159, 162**
  - Agulhas ring, image of, from **191**
  - Subantarctic Surface Water intrusion **162**
  - thermal infrared imagery from **100, 133, 161**
- NORWECOM
  - biology of Agulhas Current system, modelling by 201
- Natal (vessel)
  - participating in the International Indian Ocean Expedition 21
- Natal Basin (*see* Natal Valley)
- Natal Bight
  - Agulhas Current, ecosystem influenced by 15, 16
  - airborne radiation thermometry over **109, 111**
  - bottom shelf water on 110, **111**
  - chlorophyll-*a* distribution over **110, 110**

- circulation over 109, 111, **112**
- cyclonic eddies at **88**
- endemic species of 110
- flow distribution over 109, 111, **11**
- lee eddy in 79, 111, **112**
- morphology of 6, 108
- Natal Pulse, generated at **116**, 159, 234
- nutrient distribution over **110**, **111**
- sea surface salinities over 105, 106
- sea surface temperatures over **109**, 109, 110, **111**
- shear edge features at **100**, 109, 113
- solitary meander north of 81, 116, 118, **119**
- South Indian Central Water in 113
- Subtropical Surface Water over 110, 113
- temperature–salinity relations for 113, **114**
- Tropical Surface Water over 113
- upwelling cell in 109, **109**
- upwelling filament at 110
- vertical section along 110, **111**
- Natal Pulse
  - Agulhas Bank, along **116**
  - Agulhas ring, shedding of, influence on 11, 159, **161**, 206
  - amplitude of 114
  - characteristics brought to light by satellite investigations 234
  - current measurements in 114, 176
  - cyclones shed into Cape Basin 174
  - cyclonic motion in 116, **116**
  - depth of 114
  - diameter of 114
  - discovery of 114
  - downstream progress of 114, 115, **117**, 159, **161**
  - floats in 114, 115, 176
  - hydrographic section across **138**, 138
  - inception of 113
  - inshore current reversals due to 116
  - lateral growth of 6, **117**
  - Natal Bight, generated at **116**, 116
  - occurrence frequency of 114
  - origin of 6, 114
  - phase velocity of 114, 115, **117**, 159, **161**
  - Port Elizabeth, off 6, **116**, **158**
  - portrayal of **158**
  - RAFOS floats in 176
  - ring shedding, influence on 11, 159, **161**, 206
  - satellite thermal imagery, in **115**, **116**, 133, **161**, 176
  - sea-surface temperatures of **115**
  - solitary meander, as 114, 127
  - thermohaline circulation, influence on 196
  - trigger for **116**, 118, 119, 235
  - trigger for Agulhas ring shedding, as **161**
  - upstream retroflexion, influence on 196
  - vertical temperature profile across **115**
  - vortex shedding as generator of 116
- Natal Valley
  - sea height variability in 68, **68**
  - eddies propagating into 68, 82, 88, **89**, 118
- North Atlantic Deep Water in 32
- National Aeronautical and Space Administration (NASA)
  - CSIR, collaboration with 152
- National Centre for Atmospheric Research (NCAR)
  - CSIR, collaboration with 152
- National Centers for Medium-Range Prediction (NCEP)
  - model for heat transfer from Agulhas Current 149
- National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA)
  - CSIR, collaboration with 152
  - participating in the Benguela Sources and Transports programme 157
  - satellite images from **100**, **116**, **126**, **159**, **162**, **191**
- National Physical Research Laboratory (NPRL)
  - Physical Oceanography Division of 64
  - use of airborne radiation thermometry by 133
- National Research Institute for Oceanology (NRIO) 64
  - establishment of 64
  - demise of 64
  - role in Agulhas Current research 64
  - owner of research vessel *Meiring Naudé* 64
- Nazareth Bank
  - bifurcation of South Equatorial Current at 58, **58**
- New England seamounts
  - current kinetic energy at 156
- Newfoundland
  - Gulf Stream off 8
- nitrate (*see also* nutrients)
  - Agulhas retroflexion, section across **169**
  - Agulhas rings, in 180
  - Natal Bight, distribution over **110**, 110
  - Natal Bight, section across **110**, 110
  - south-eastern Madagascar upwelling cell, in 63
  - Durban, off **111**
- North Atlantic Current
  - Gulf Stream, as termination of the 8
- North Atlantic Deep Water
  - Agulhas Current, in northern 101, **102**, 106
  - Agulhas Current, in southern 123, **124**
  - Agulhas retroflexion, in 164, **166**
  - Agulhas Return Current, in 32, **33**
  - Cape Basin, movement through 32, **33**
  - deep boundary current off west coast, in 164
  - depth of 30, 32
  - flow path of 9, 30
  - heat and volume fluxes in South Atlantic modelled for 197
  - influx to South West Indian Ocean of 32, **33**
  - Labrador Sea, origin in 9
  - Madagascar, north of 32
  - modelled simulation of 48
  - Mozambique Basin, in 32
  - Mozambique Channel, in 32, **82**, 83
  - Mozambique Undercurrent, in 78
  - Natal Basin, in 32
  - production of, modelled **198**, 198
  - salinity of 9
  - Somali Basin, flow of, into 32
  - South Atlantic Ocean, fluxes across 9

- Southern Ocean, in 9
- South Indian Ocean, erosion in 32
- South West Indian Ocean, in 28, 29, 34, 34
- temperature of 9, 28, 29
- temperature–salinity relationships of, in western Indian Ocean 28, 30
- temperature–oxygen relationships of, in western Indian Ocean 29, 30
- Tropical Surface Water in 102
- volume flux in Agulhas Current of 101, 102
- volume flux in South Atlantic of 197
- Walvis Ridge, moving through 32, 33
- North Atlantic Ocean
  - currents of ix
  - surface salinity of 9
  - heat flux through 196, 197
- North East Monsoon (*see also* winds; monsoon winds)
- Somali Current, as driving force for 8, 17
- North East Pacific Ocean
  - crossing of cyclones and anti-cyclones in 174
- North Indian Central Water (*see also* Central Water)
- formation of 40
- Indian Ocean, volume percentage in 28
- Mozambique Channel, in 40
- temperature–salinity characteristics of 41
- North Indian Deep Water
  - South West Indian Ocean, circulation in 34, 34, 83
  - Mozambique Channel, in 82, 83
- North Indian Intermediate Water (*see* Red Sea Water)
- North Madagascar Current
  - volume transport modelled for 48, 60
- North Subtropical Convergence (*see also* Subtropical Convergence)
- South Atlantic Ocean, in 221
- surface characteristics of 218
- Northern Agulhas Current (*see also* Agulhas Current)
- adsorption of eddies onto 118
- Antarctic Bottom Water in 106
- Antarctic Intermediate Water in 101, 102, 107, 107
- boundaries of 97, 126
- boundary, offshore, of 97
- characteristics of, learnt to date 235
- core of 93, 94, 97, 98, 98
- clouds over 149
- Durban, at 96, 97
- counter current at 98
- current edge inshore of 97, 126
- current measurements in 92, 94, 94, 95, 97, 103, 108, 108
- current structure of 94, 94, 95, 96, 97
- current velocities of 91, 92, 93, 94, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98, 98, 99, 104, 108, 108
- depth of 94, 94, 95, 95, 101
- downstream intensification of 105
- drifters in 9
- Ekman veering under 110
- floats in 127
- hydrographic sections across 93, 123
- hydrography of 105
- inflow into 104
- kinetic energy for 91, 92
- meander in 93, 114
- mesoscale variability in 68, 75, 91, 92
- Natal Bight, off the 93, 99, 104, 109, 111, 112
- North Atlantic Deep Water in 101, 102, 106
- path stability of 94, 100
- plumes, warm water, of 100, 100
- Port Edward, at 96
- rainfall, coastal, influence on 223
- Red Sea Water in 40, 101, 102, 107, 107
- Richards Bay, at 96
- river runoff along 106, 107, 111, 113
- satellite portrayal of 100
- sea surface salinities of 97
- seasonal variability of 91, 92, 100, 102, 106
- shear edge features on 100, 100
- speeds of (*see* current velocities of)
- South Indian Central Water in 102, 106, 107, 107
- South Indian Intermediate Water in 106, 107
- storm intensification by 223
- Subtropical Surface Water in 101, 102, 106, 106, 107, 107
- surface characteristics of 96, 97, 97, 105
- surface drift speeds of 91, 94, 121
- surface drifters in 104
- surface variability of 97
- temperature–salinity relationships of 97, 99, 101, 102, 105, 106, 107, 107
- transport, downstream increase in, of 104, 104, 105
- transport, variability of 103
- Tropical Surface Water in 101, 102, 106, 106
- Tropical Thermocline Water in 107
- vertical penetration of 94, 94, 95
- vertical sections across 93, 94, 94, 95, 99
- vertical velocity structure of 93, 94, 94, 95
- volume transport of 42, 100, 101, 102, 104
- volume transport of water masses of 102
- water masses in 101, 102
- waves on 105
- width of 94, 97, 98
- Northern Subtropical Front
  - nomenclature for 222
- numerical model (*see* model)
- nutrients (*see also* nitrate; silicate; phosphate)
- Agulhas Bank, on 168
- Agulhas retroflexion, in 168
- Agulhas ring, in 180, 181
- Cape St Lucia, -rich water off 109, 110
- Natal Bight, distribution over 110, 111, 111
- Natal Bight, section across 111
- Port Alfred upwelling cell, enhancement in 130, 135, 150
- south-eastern Madagascar upwelling cell, in 63
- Subtropical Convergence, at 168, 220



- OCCAM (*see* Ocean Circulation and Advanced Modelling Project)
- Ocean Circulation and Advanced Modelling Project (OCCAM)
- simulation point of bifurcation of South Equatorial Current modelled by 58, **59**
  - simulation of currents around Madagascar by **59**
  - simulation of connection between East Madagascar and Agulhas Currents by 65
  - simulation of eddy kinetic energy by 67, **75**
  - simulation of flow in Mozambique Current by 70
- oceanic conveyor belt (*see* thermohaline circulation cell)
- oceanic eddies (*see also* eddy)
- Natal Basin, in 68, 82, 88, **89**, 118
- oil slicks
- Durban, to trace water movement off 112
- oxygen content (*see also* oxygen minimum layer)
- Agulhas Bank, along edge of 167, **167**, 168
  - Agulhas Current retroflexion, in 166, 167, **167**,
  - Agulhas Return Current, in **213**, 215
  - Agulhas ring, in 170, 179, 180, **181**, **182**
  - Antarctic Intermediate Water, in **29**, **82**, 82, 83, 123, **166**
  - Antarctic Bottom Water, in **29**, **166**
  - Benguela upwelling regime, in 190, 191
  - Indian Ocean, of western 17, 19, 28, **29**, 29, 30, 32, 38, 40
  - North Atlantic Deep Water, in **29**, **82**, 83, **124**, **166**
  - North Indian Deep Water, in **82**, 83
  - Red Sea Water **82**, 83, **124**, **166**
  - Subantarctic Mode Water, of 29, **29**, **123**, **124**, **166**
  - Subtropical Surface Water, of 29, **29**, **82**, 83, 123
  - Tropical Thermocline Water, of **124**, **166**
  - Tropical Surface Water, of **29**, **82**
- oxygen minimum layer
- Agulhas Current, in **167**, **213**
  - Agulhas Current water, as tracer of 168, 191, 215
  - Agulhas Return Current, in 215
  - Agulhas retroflexion, in **167**
  - Agulhas rings, in 170, 179, 180, **181**, **182**
  - shallow 29, **29**, 107, 166, 167, **167**, 170, 171, 191
- oxygen section (*see* hydrographic section)
- palaeoceanography
- Agulhas Current, studies of 15, 130
- Pelagia* (vessel)
- used in ACSEX programme 157
- Persian Gulf
- source of high salinity water, as 17, 30
- phosphate
- Agulhas retroflexion, section across 168, **169**
  - Agulhas ring, in 180
  - south-eastern Madagascar upwelling cell, in 63
- Pieter Faure* (vessel)
- used for pioneering exploration by John Gilchrist 4
- pigment concentrations (*see* chlorophyll-*a*)
- Planet* (vessel)
- used in pioneering observations 2, 19
- planetary wave
- Agulhas Return Current, on 220
  - shifting east of Agulhas Plateau 226
- plankton bloom
- seasonal 44
  - St Lucia upwelling cell, at 109
- plastic pollution (*see also* pollution; marine pollution)
- Agulhas Current, transportation by 14
- plumes
- Agulhas Bank, at 7, 125, 127, 128, **129**, 129, 139
  - Agulhas Bank, dimensions at 127, 129, 132
  - Agulhas Current, on northern 100, **100**
  - Agulhas Current, on southern **116**, 125, **126**, 126, 127
  - Gulf Stream, on edges of 131
  - Natal Bight, at 100, **100**
  - warm water, of 100, **100**, **116**, 125, **129**, 129
- Polar Front (*see* Antarctic Polar Front)
- pollution (*see also* plastic pollution; marine pollution)
- Agulhas Current, transportation by 14
- Ponto do Ouro
- sediments downstream of 96
  - temperature decrease downstream of 124
  - Agulhas Current at 91
- Port Alfred (*see also* Port Alfred upwelling cell)
- Agulhas Current, volume transport at 101
  - air-sea interaction at 135, 150
  - bathymetric similarity to south-eastern Madagascar 62
  - cloud formation at **150**
  - hydrographic sections at 133, **134**
  - nutrients in waters at 135
  - temperature–salinity relationships at **136**, 136
  - temperature sections at 133, **134**
  - upwelling at (*see* Port Alfred upwelling cell)
- Port Alfred upwelling cell (*see also* Port Alfred)
- Agulhas Bank bottom water, as origin of 144, **145**
  - air-sea interaction at 149, 150
  - chlorophyll in 137
  - cowries in 137
  - driving forces for 138, 139
  - Ekman drift at 138
  - geographic extent of 132, **135**, **137**
  - heat fluxes to atmosphere from 135, 149, 150
  - hydrographic section across 133, **134**, **136**, **138**, 138
  - influence of 137
  - nutrient enhancement at 135
  - satellite studies of **116**, 133, 135, **135**
  - siphonophores at 137
  - South Indian Central Water in 135, **136**, 136
  - South Indian Subtropical Surface Water in 135, **136**
  - surface temperatures of 132, 133, **134**, 135
  - temperature–salinity relationships at 135, **136**
  - Tropical Indian Surface Water in 135, **136**
  - water upwelled in 131, **134**, 135
- Port Edward
- Agulhas Current characteristics at 96, **99**, 108
  - current measurements at **95**, **97**, **98**, 108, 157
  - current velocities at **95**, **97**, **98**, **99**, **104**

- volume flux, growth in, downstream of 104
- volume transport at 100, **104**
- Port Elizabeth
  - Agulhas retroflection south of 196
  - bottom water at 142
  - current border at 122
  - drifter south of 158
  - hydrographic section at 122, **123**
  - hydrographic sections north of 93, 122
  - hydrographic surveys north of **123**
  - location of **6**
  - Natal Pulse, phase velocity change of, at 15, 117, 159, **161**
  - Natal Pulse at 6, **116**
  - shear instabilities downstream of 125, **126**
  - shelf/current arrangement at 138
  - shelf waves, termination of, at 149
  - temperature–salinity relationships of water at 105
  - temperature section at 122
  - upstream retroflection at 6, 196
  - upwelling close to **159**
  - volume transport of Agulhas Current at 103
  - winds at 149
- Port St Johns
  - temperature section at 122, **123**
- potential energy
  - Agulhas ring, of 174, 194
  - Agulhas rings, fluxes due to 193
- potential temperatures
  - Antarctic Bottom Water, of **28, 30, 31, 39, 166**
  - Antarctic Intermediate Water, of **28, 30, 36, 82, 82, 106, 107, 166**
  - bottom waters in South West Indian Ocean, of 30, **31**
  - North Atlantic Deep Water, of **28, 30, 35, 37, 39, 40, 82, 82, 123, 124, 166**
  - postulated Brazil Current ring, of 179
  - Red Sea Water, of **28, 30, 35, 37, 39, 40, 82, 82, 106, 106, 107, 123, 124, 166**
  - Subtropical Surface Water, of **28, 39, 41, 82, 82, 106, 106, 113, 114, 146, 166**
  - western Indian Ocean, related to oxygen of **29, 82, 124, 166**
  - western Indian Ocean, related to salinities of **28, 82, 106, 107, 124, 165**
- potential temperature–salinity relationships (*see* temperature–salinity relationships)
- primary productivity
  - in South Indian Ocean 18
  - seasonality of, in South Indian Ocean 18
  - Subtropical Convergence, at 21, 223
- Prince Edward Fracture Zone
  - Antarctic Bottom Water, as conduit for 32
- Princeton Ocean Model (*see* model)
- quasi-biennial atmospheric oscillation
  - impact on rainfall modulated by sea surface temperatures 223
- RSA (vessel)
  - drifters launched from 152
- radiation thermometry (*see* airborne radiation thermometry)
- RAFOS floats (*see* floats)
- rainfall
  - Agulhas Current, affected by 137, 223, 234
  - coastline, at 223
  - oscillations of 223
- recirculation
  - South West Indian Ocean subgyre, in 84, **84, 104**
- recruitment
  - pelagic fish in Benguela upwelling regime, of 190
  - Agulhas rings, influence of, on 190
- Red Sea
  - source of high salinity water 17
  - pre-war German research in 19
- Red Sea-Persian Gulf Intermediate Water (*see* North Indian Intermediate Water)
- Red Sea Intermediate Water (*see* Red Sea Water)
- Red Sea Water (*see also* North Indian Intermediate Water)
  - Agulhas Current, flux of, in 40
  - Agulhas Current, in northern 40, 101, **102, 106, 107, 107**
  - Agulhas Current, in southern 38, **38, 123, 124**
  - Agulhas retroflection, in **166, 166**
  - Agulhas rings, in 40
  - Agulhas undercurrent, in 95
  - Cape Basin, in 190
  - depth of 37, 38
  - Indian Ocean, in 35, **35, 38**
  - Mozambique Channel, in 30, **36, 37, 38, 38, 40, 83, 107, 166**
  - Mozambique Channel, depth in 37
  - Mozambique Basin, in 37, **38, 40, 77, 82, 83**
  - Mozambique eddy, in 37, **38, 40, 77**
  - oxygen content of **82, 83**
  - South West Indian Ocean, in 17, **35, 36, 38**
  - South West Indian Ocean, erosion of, in 17, **35, 36, 38**
  - temperature–salinity characteristics of, in Mozambique Channel 30
  - temperature–salinity characteristics of, in western Indian Ocean **28, 30**
  - temperature–oxygen relationships of, in western Indian Ocean **29, 29**
  - volume of 28
  - volume transport in Agulhas Current of 101, **102**
- Red Sea-Persian Gulf Intermediate Water (*see* Red Sea Water)
- retroflection
  - Agulhas Current, of (*see* Agulhas (Current) retroflection) 155
  - East Madagascar Current, of **60, 65, 66**
  - East Madagascar Current, modelling of 66, **66, 67**
  - upstream 6, 120, 196
- Réunion (island of)
  - divergence of South Equatorial Current at 54
- Richards Bay

- Agulhas Current characteristics at 96, **99**
- currents at 96, **99**, 99, **113**
- current measurements at 96, 99, 108
- nutrients at 109
- sea surface temperatures at **109**, 109
- upwelling at 109, **109**
- winds at **113**
- rings (*see also* Agulhas rings)
  - Agulhas Current, formed by (*see* Agulhas rings)
  - East Australian Current, formed by 162
  - Gulf Stream, formed by 159
  - shedding process of (*see* Agulhas rings)
- river runoff
  - Agulhas Current, along northern 106, 107
  - Natal Bight, at 111, 113
- Rossby radius of deformation
  - Agulhas rings, and 200
- Rossby wave
  - Agulhas Return Current, in 213
  - Agulhas Plateau, propagating west of 213
  - Agulhas rings, radiating from 182
- SAF (*see* Synthetic Aperture Radar)
- SANCOR (*see* South African National Committee for Oceanographic Research)
- S.A.S. Natal (*see* Natal)
- SAR (*see* Synthetic Aperture Radar)
- SCARC (*see* Subtropical Convergence and Agulhas Retroflexion Cruise)
- SCOR (*see* Scientific Committee on Oceanic Research)
- SeaWiFS (*see* Sea-viewing of Wide Field Sensor)
- SA *Agulhas* (vessel)
  - used for Subtropical Convergence and Agulhas Retroflexion Cruise 157
- Sagitta enflata* (chaetognath) (*see also* chaetognaths)
  - Agulhas Current water, indicator species for 15
- Saldanha Bay
  - cruises by research vessel *Meiring Naudé* to 103
- salinity distribution (*see also* temperature–salinity relationships)
  - Antarctic Bottom Water, in 30, **31**
  - Antarctic Intermediate Water in South West Indian Ocean, in 37, **37**
  - North Atlantic Deep Water in South West Indian Ocean, in 32, **33**, 34, **34**
  - Red Sea Water in South West Indian Ocean, in 34, **34**
  - South West Indian Ocean, at bottom of 30, **31**
- salinity profiles
  - Agulhas Return Current, in **213**, **216**
  - South West Indian Ocean, of current elements of **43**
- salinity section (*see* hydrographic section)
- salt fluxes
  - Agulhas filaments, by 132, 192
  - inter-ocean, by Agulhas filaments 192, 194
  - inter-ocean, by Agulhas rings 193
  - Sofala Bank, on 74
  - South Atlantic subtropical gyre, in, modelled for 197
- salt marshes
  - at Sofala Bank 74
- sand dunes
  - bedform, as part of 96, **96**
  - bottom sediments, in 96, **96**
  - current speeds, to indicate 96
- satellite altimetry (*see* altimetry)
- satellite investigations (*see also* altimetry; TRMM)
  - Agulhas Bank, of upwelling on **116**, 133
  - Agulhas Current, of southern **116**, 125, **126**, 133, **159**, 235
  - Agulhas Current, of northern **100**, 133
  - Agulhas Current, to study edge, of **116**, **126**
  - Agulhas Current retroflexion, of 151, 158, **159**, **160**, **162**, 234
  - Agulhas filaments, of **126**, **132**, 133
  - Agulhas Front, of 217
  - Agulhas Plateau, at **230**
  - Agulhas Return Current, of **159**, 210, 211, 226, **227**
  - Agulhas retroflexion, of 133, 158, **159**, **162**
  - Agulhas ring shedding and movement of 133, 159, **161**, **162**, **188**, **191**, **205**, **206**, 234
  - altimetry, using 133, 178
  - Brazil rings, of 178
  - Delagoa Pulse, of 118
  - East Madagascar Current retroflexion, of 61, 133
  - giant waves, to study 105, 133
  - history of use of 133
  - Natal Bight, using colour imagery in 110
  - Natal Pulse, of 114, **117**, 133, **161**, 176, 234
  - pioneering use of 133
  - Port Alfred upwelling cell, of 133, 135, **135**
  - ring shedding process, of 234
  - sea level, of 133, 178
  - shear edge features, of **116**, **126**, 133
  - Subtropical Convergence, of **221**, **227**
  - surface waves, of 105
  - thermal infrared, usefulness of 3, 133
  - upstream retroflexion, of 196
  - upwelling filament, of **191**
- Satellite Remote Sensing Centre (*see also* Hartebeesthoek)
  - CSIR, of 133
- Scanfish undulator
  - observations by, in Agulhas ring 185, **186**
- Scientific Committee on Oceanic Research (SCOR)
  - International Indian Ocean Expedition, role in 21
  - South African presidency of 64
- Sea Fisheries Research Institute
  - participating in Benguela Sources and Transports programme 157
- sea level observations
  - shelf waves, to establish 149
- sea level variability (*see* altimetry)
- sea surface salinities (*see also* temperature–salinity relationships)
  - Agulhas Current, of northern 105, **106**
  - Agulhas Current, of northern shelf off 105
  - Agulhas rings, modification in 180

- Subantarctic Surface Water, in wedge of 162, **163**, 168
- sea surface temperatures (*see also* temperature–salinity relationships)
- Agulhas Bank, over 140, **142**, **147**
- Agulhas Current, of northern 105, **106**
- Agulhas Current, of southern 153, **153**, 223
- Agulhas Front, of 217, **218**
- Agulhas retroflection, of 153, **153**, **159**
- Agulhas Return Current, of 153, **153**
- Antarctic Polar Front, of 218
- cycles in 223
- Durban, off 105
- Gouriqua (Mossel Bay), at 141, **142**
- Natal Bight, over 109, **109**, 110, **111**
- Natal Pulse, across a **115**
- North Subtropical Convergence, of **218**
- Port Alfred upwelling cell, at 132, 133
- rainfall, affected by 223
- South East Atlantic Ocean, of 194
- South West Indian Ocean, of, and rainfall 223
- South Subtropical Convergence, of **218**
- Subantarctic Front, of **218**
- Subantarctic Surface Water, in wedge of **163**, 164
- Subtropical Convergence, of 153, **218**
- variability of 217, 230
- sea surface temperature anomalies (*see also* sea surface temperatures)
- Agulhas retroflection, in 223
- cycles in 223
- Indian Ocean, in 223
- rainfall, effect on, of 223, 235
- South Indian Ocean, in 223
- Southern Oscillation, dampening effect of, on 223
- SEASAT (satellite)
- Agulhas retroflection, altimeter observations of 154
- sea height variability south of Madagascar, observations of 68, **68**
- seasonality
- Agulhas Bank, of waters on 110, 129, 140, **141**, 144, **147**
- Agulhas Current, of 91, 92
- Agulhas Current, of northern 91, 92
- Agulhas Current, of southern 124
- Agulhas Current, of volume transport of **100**, 102
- Agulhas Current retroflection, of 154, 195
- Agulhas Current system, of 102
- Agulhas retroflection variability, of 154, 195
- East African Coastal Current, of 55
- East Madagascar Current, of 58, 91, 92
- Mozambique Channel, in 92
- Mozambique Current, of 91
- Mozambique Current, modelled for 91
- Somali Current, modelled for 70
- South East Atlantic Ocean, of sea surface temperatures, in 194
- South Equatorial Current, of 91
- South Equatorial Current, modelled for 91
- South Indian Ocean gyre, of 102
- South West Indian Ocean, of temperature structure in the 44, **45**
- south-eastern Madagascar upwelling cell, of 63
- sea turtles (*see* marine turtles)
- Sea-viewing of Wide Field of Sensor (SeaWiFS) (satellite)
- South Africans, use made of by 133
- sediments
- bottom current directions, showing 96, **96**, 111, 112, 130
- continental shelf, on 96, 121
- Natal Bight, in water over 111
- self-steering
- Agulhas rings, by 187
- Seychelles–Mauritius Ridge
- flow obstruction, as 47
- current shadow behind 47
- shear edge eddies
- Agulhas Bank, off 100, 127, **127**, 131, 176, **177**, 177
- Agulhas Bight, in 127, **127**, 131
- Agulhas Current, on northern **100**, 100
- Agulhas Current, on southern 125, 127
- floats in 176, **177**,
- Gulf Stream, of 100, 131
- modelled 127, **128**
- Natal Bight, at **100**, 109, 113
- Kuroshio, of 100
- South Indian Ocean Central Water in 131
- studies by satellite of **126**, 133
- shelf sediment (*see* continental shelf)
- shelf waves
- location of occurrence of 149
- propagation, termination to, of 149
- shelf currents (*see* continental shelf currents)
- shipping routes
- early 53
- ships' drift observations
- Agulhas Current, in northern 91, 92, **93**
- Agulhas Current, in southern 1, 121, **228**
- Agulhas Current, in sources of 53, 54
- Agulhas Return Current, for 220, **228**
- Indian Ocean circulation, of **18**, 23
- kinetic energy of flow, used to establish 151
- South West Indian Ocean circulation, of 23, 53, **55**
- Subtropical Convergence eddy, in **228**
- silicate (*see also* nutrients)
- Port Alfred upwelling cell, in 135
- Subantarctic Surface Water, in 168
- siphonophore
- Agulhas Current, influence on distribution of 14, 137
- Cape St Lucia upwelling cell, at 109
- Port Alfred upwelling cell, at 137
- Sofala Bank
- circulation on 73
- freshwater influence on 74
- salt marshes at 74
- Zambezi runoff onto 73
- Somali Current
- characteristics, unique, of 8, 17, **18**



- depth of 8
- seasonality of 8, 17
- surface speeds of 8
- volume flux of 8
- western boundary current, as 8
- Somali Basin
  - Antarctic Bottom Water movement into 30
  - North Atlantic Deep Water, flow of, into 32
- sources
  - Agulhas Current, of the 53 ff.
  - East Madagascar Current, of the 57
- South African National Committee for Oceanographic Research (SANCOR)
  - formation of 21
- South African National Oceanographic Symposium
  - first held 21
- South African Weather Bureau
  - deploying drifters 152
  - predicting hazardous waves on Agulhas Current 105
- South Atlantic Current (*see* South Atlantic Ocean Current)
- South Atlantic Ocean (*see also* South East Atlantic Ocean)
  - Agulhas Current, tracing water from, in 167
  - Agulhas retroflexion loop protruding into **159, 160**
  - Antarctic Bottom Water fluxes in 197
  - Antarctic Intermediate Water fluxes in 192, 197
  - Benguela Current, forming part of gyre of, in 189
  - circulation variability of 194, 195
  - general mean motion of **188**
  - geostrophic velocities in **188**
  - heat fluxes across 30° S meridian of 197
  - heat fluxes modelled for 197
  - Indian Ocean water, direct flux of, into 191, 192
  - Indian Ocean water, flux of, by rings into 192, 193, 194
  - North Atlantic Deep Water fluxes in 197
  - salt fluxes modelled for 197
  - seasonality in 194, 195
  - Subtropical Convergence in 220, **221**, 221
  - Subtropical Mode Water in 166, **166**, 167, 168, 178
  - tropical water from 190, 192
  - volume transport across 30° S meridian of 197
  - volume transport in 101, 102, 190, 192, 197, 198, **219**
- South Atlantic (Ocean) Current
  - Benguela Current, feeding 221
  - depth of 44
  - eddies shed from 187
  - geostrophic velocities of **219**
  - South Atlantic gyre, as part of 220, 221
  - South Indian Ocean Current, analogy to 220
  - volume transport of 44, 192, 218, **219**
- South (East) Atlantic (Ocean) Central Water
  - Agulhas retroflexion, in 164, 165
  - temperature and salinity range of 40
- South Atlantic Surface Water
  - heat fluxes for 197
  - heat and volume fluxes modelled for 197
  - volume flux of 197
- South East Atlantic Ocean (*see also* South Atlantic Ocean)
  - Agulhas water, influence of warm, on 157, 164, 189, 192, 199
  - sea surface temperatures of 194
  - cold pulse, influence of, on 164
  - current observations in 157
- South East Indian Ocean
  - crossing of cyclones and anti-cyclones, in 174
- South Equatorial Current
  - Agulhas Current, volume flux contribution to 68
  - bifurcation at Madagascar of (*see* splitting at Madagascar coast of)
  - bifurcation of, modelled at Nazareth Bank 58, **58**
  - depth of 42, **43**
  - early portrayals of 54, **55**
  - East Madagascar Current, as source of 19, 57
  - Mascarene Plateau, effect on 19
  - model simulation of 47
  - Mozambique Channel, input to 70
  - seasonality of 17, 91
  - seasonality, modelled for 91
  - speed of 43
  - splitting at Madagascar coast of 19, 57, 58
  - Subtropical Surface Water in 44
  - Tropical Surface Water, as source of 44
  - vertical profiles for 43
- South Indian Central Water
  - Agulhas Bank, on 142
  - Agulhas Current, volume transport in 101, **102**
  - Natal Bight, in 113
  - northern Agulhas Current, in **102, 107**, 107
  - Port Alfred upwelling cell, in 135, **136**
  - southern Agulhas Current, in 123
  - temperature-salinity relationships of, in western Indian Ocean **28**, 29, 40
  - temperature-oxygen relationships of, in western Indian Ocean **29**, 29
  - volume transport in Agulhas Current, in 101, **102**
- South Indian (Ocean) Intermediate Water
  - Agulhas Current, in northern 106, 107
  - Port Elizabeth, at 107
- South Indian Ocean (*see also* South West Indian Ocean)
  - Agulhas water, course of, across 209, 231
  - Antarctic Intermediate Water, circulation of, in 40
  - atmospheric pressure over **22**
  - baroclinic volume flux of 24, 41, **41**
  - circulatory cells in 47
  - Current (*see* South Indian Ocean Current)
  - flow patterns of 23
  - flow perturbations moving across 233
  - fronts of **218**
  - gyre invigoration of 130
  - hydrographic section across 26, **26**
  - leakage from (*see* inter-ocean exchange)
  - mean dynamic topography of **20, 25**
  - mixed layer depths of 44, **45**
  - modes of variability, model simulation of, for 47
  - North Atlantic Deep Water erosion in 32

- primary productivity in 18
- sea surface temperature anomalies on 50, 223
- seasonality of gyre in 102
- Subtropical Convergence in 221
- subtropical gyre of 17
- Subtropical Mode Water in 19, 28, 29, 29
- surface currents of 18, 20, 25
- surface temperatures of 11, 12
- thermocline ventilation, in 44
- volume transport in gyre of 24
- South Indian (Ocean) Central Water
  - Agulhas Bank, on 142, 143
  - Agulhas retroflexion, in 166
  - depth of, in South West Indian Ocean 40
  - Natal Bight upwelling cell, in 113
  - northern Agulhas Current, in 101, 102, 106, 106, 107, 107
  - shear edge eddies, in 131
  - southern Agulhas Current, in 131
  - temperature–oxygen characteristics of 29
  - temperature–salinity characteristics of 28
  - volume of 27
- South Indian Ocean Current
  - depth of 231
  - eddies associated with 231
  - fronts associated with 231
  - geostrophic velocities of 230, 231
  - Kerguelen Plateau, initiated at 7, 209
  - location of 230, 231
  - model simulation of 44, 230
  - nomenclature on 220
  - South Atlantic Current, analogy to 220
  - subtropical gyre, as part of 19, 231
- South Indian (Ocean) Subtropical Surface Water (*see* Subtropical Surface Water)
- “South Madagascar Current”
  - as origin of deep sea eddies 88
- South Pacific Ocean
  - Antarctic Intermediate Water, source of 192
- South Subtropical Convergence (*see also* Subtropical Convergence)
  - South Atlantic Ocean, in 221
  - surface characteristics of 218
- South West Indian (Ocean) Central Water
  - Agulhas retroflexion, in 164, 165
- South West Indian Ocean (*see also* South Indian Ocean)
  - altimetric observations of 24, 25, 88
  - Antarctic Bottom Water, temperature–salinity characteristics of, in 28
  - Antarctic Bottom Water, temperature–salinity characteristics of, in 29
  - Antarctic Intermediate Water, erosion of, in 36, 37
  - Antarctic Intermediate Water in 28, 29, 33, 35, 36, 83
  - Antarctic Intermediate Water, temperature–salinity relationships of, in 28
  - Antarctic Intermediate Water, temperature–oxygen relationships of, in 29
  - Antarctic Intermediate Water, circulation of, in 32, 33, 37, 37, 83
  - Antarctic Intermediate Water, depth of, in 37
  - Antarctic Intermediate Water, distribution of, in 37
  - bottom temperatures of 30, 32
  - bottom topography of 6
  - bottom salinities of 30, 32
  - circulation at 1000 m depth in 20, 23, 84
  - circulation of, according to ship’s drift 53
  - circulation in, modelled 47, 48, 49
  - Circumpolar Deep Water in 32
  - continental rainfall, and 11, 12, 16, 223
  - current variability in 68, 68
  - deep-sea eddies in
  - downwelling in 23
  - drifters in 84, 86
  - eddies in 86, 86, 87
  - eddy kinetic energy for 92
  - Ekman transport over 23
  - flow patterns of 18, 20, 23, 24, 25
  - general circulation in 18, 20, 24, 25
  - geostrophic velocity of current components of 56, 56
  - high pressure systems over 148
  - Indian Deep Water, temperature–salinity characteristics of, in 28
  - Indian Deep Water, temperature–oxygen characteristics of, in 29
  - Indonesian Intermediate Water, in 35, 35
  - kinetic energy of 92
  - large-scale circulation of 17, 18, 20, 24, 25
  - mass transport function of 41
  - mixed layer of 44, 45
  - modelling with FRAM 47
  - models of movement in 46, 47
  - North Atlantic Deep Water, temperature–salinity relationships of, in 28
  - North Atlantic Deep Water, temperature–oxygen relationships of, in 29
  - North Atlantic Deep Water influx into 32
  - North Indian Deep Water, circulation in 34, 34, 83
  - permanent thermocline of 40, 43, 44
  - publications, annual number of, on ix, ix, x
  - rainfall, influence on 11
  - recirculation in 23
  - recirculation, modeled, of 46
  - Red Sea Water, in 35, 36, 38
  - Red Sea Water, salinity of, in 28, 36, 38
  - Red Sea Water, temperature–salinity relationships of, in 28, 36
  - Red Sea Water, temperature–oxygen relationships of, in 29, 29
  - salinities of 28, 30, 32
  - salinity of Red Sea Water, in 28, 36, 38
  - salinity profiles in 43
  - sea surface temperatures of 19, 28, 28, 29, 45, 46
  - seasonal thermocline of 44

- seasonal variability in 24
- seasonal variability in currents of 24
- ships' drift measurements in 53
- South Indian Central Water, temperature-salinity relationships of, in **28**
- South Indian Central Water, temperature-oxygen relationships of, in **29, 29**
- South Indian Central Water, depth of, in 40
- Subantarctic Mode Water, temperature-salinity relationships of, in **28, 28, 29**
- Subantarctic Mode Water, temperature-oxygen relationships of, in **29, 29**
- subgyre of (*see* South West Indian Ocean subgyre) **6, 17, 23**
- Subtropical Convergence in 19 ff., 24, 30, 40, 41, 44, 47, 48, 209, 210, 213, 214, 215, 216, 217, 218 ff.
- Subtropical Surface Water, temperature-salinity relationships of, in **28**
- Subtropical Surface Water, temperature-oxygen relationships of, in **29, 29**
- surface flow of **55, 55**
- temperature-salinity relationships of **28, 28, 146**
- temperatures of **28, 28, 30, 32**
- thermal structure of upper layers of **43, 44, 45, 46**
- thermocline of **40, 43, 44**
- thermocline ventilation of 168
- Tropical Surface Water, temperature-salinity relationships of, in **28, 28**
- Tropical Surface Water, temperature-oxygen relationships of, in **29, 29**
- Tropical Thermocline Water, temperature-salinity relationships of, in **28, 28**
- Tropical Thermocline Water, temperature-oxygen relationships of, in **29, 29**
- variability of 24
- ventilation of thermocline waters in 168
- vertical temperature structure in **44, 45**
- volume flux of **24, 41, 41, 42, 42,**
- volume transport of **24, 41, 41, 42, 42**
- volumetry of **26, 27, 27**
- water masses of **26, 27**
- wind regime of **22, 22**
- wind steadiness over 22
- wind stress over 23
- South West Indian Ocean eddies
  - depth of 87
  - dimensions of **86, 87, 87**
  - hydrographic section across **86**
  - kinetic energy of 87
  - life spans of 87
  - Mozambique Plateau, at 65, 81, 82, 86, **87, 87**
  - origin of 88
  - potential energy of 87
  - speeds in 86
  - volume transport of **86, 87**
- South West Indian Ocean Ridge
  - border to model simulated variability, as 47
  - drifters, influenced by **212**
  - leakage through 69
  - portrayal of **6**
- South West Indian Ocean sub-gyre
  - Agulhas Current, contribution to, by 6, 84, 85
  - Agulhas retroflexion, recirculating thermostads from 168
  - altimetry, from 24, **25**
  - depth of 23
  - drifters in 84, 86
  - geostrophic circulation of **84**
  - hydrographic data, from historical 23, **24, 24**
  - intra-thermocline eddies in 89
  - model simulation of 48, **49**
  - numerical model, from a 48, **49**
  - portrayal of **6, 6, 20, 84**
  - recirculation in 84, **84, 104, 107, 209**
  - surface drift of 84
  - volume flux of 85
- South West Monsoon (*see also* winds; monsoon winds)
  - Somali Current, as driving force for 8, 17
- Southern Agulhas Current (*see also* Agulhas Current)
  - Agulhas Bank, influence on 143, 145, 146
  - altimetric observations of 204
  - Antarctic Intermediate Water in 123
  - atmosphere, effect on overlying, of 135
  - atmospheric circulation over 138, 141, **142, 143, 148, 149, 150, 164**
  - baroclinic instability, modelled for 125
  - clouds over 149, **150, 150**
  - defined, generically 121
  - drifters in 158, 204, **212**
  - dynamic topography of **210, 211**
  - eddy kinetic energy modelled at 204
  - floats in 128
  - heat fluxes from 135, 149
  - hydrographic section across 122, **123, 125, 213, 224, 228**
  - hydrography of 121 ff
  - marine boundary layer over 149
  - meanderings on 125, 126, **126**
  - meander movement of 125, **126**
  - meander wavelength of 125, 127
  - mesoscale variability in **68, 75, 92**
  - mixed layer of 143
  - modelling of 125
  - North Atlantic Deep Water in 123, **124**
  - portrayal of **158, 159**
  - plumes on **116, 125, 126, 126, 127**
  - Red Sea Water in 123, **124**
  - satellite imagery of **116, 125, 126**
  - seasonality of 124, 143
  - shear edge eddies at 125, **126, 127, 127, 176**
  - shelf edge front of **126**
  - silica in 135
  - South Indian Central Water in 123
  - South Indian Subtropical Surface Water in 123
  - Subantarctic Mode Water in 123, **124**
  - surface characteristics of 124

- surface speeds of 121, 122
- temperature–oxygen characteristics of 122, 123, **124**
- temperature–salinity characteristics of **39**, 122, **124**
- thermal borders of **126**
- thermocline of 143
- trajectory of **126**
- Tropical Indian Surface Water in 122
- Tropical Thermocline Water in 123, **124**
- upwelling inshore of **116**, 132, **135**
- variability of **68**, **75**, **92**
- vertical stratification of 143
- volume flux of 103, **122**, 122, 214
- winds over 149
- Southern oscillation (*see* El Niño–Southern Oscillation (ENSO))
- Southern Ocean
  - drifters in 152
  - frontal systems of 216, **218**
  - heat fluxes from 196
  - heat loss to, from Agulhas Current system 199
  - variability in 152
  - volumetry of 28
- South Subtropical Front
  - nomenclature for 222
- space shuttle
  - use of SAR on board of 133
- splitting
  - Agulhas rings, of 180, 182, **189**, 204
- St Lucia (*see* Cape St Lucia)
- St Lucia upwelling cell
  - chlorophyll at 109
  - hydrographic sections south of 93
  - nutrient rich water of 109
  - plankton production at 109
  - siphonophores at 109
  - South Indian Central Water in 113
  - South Indian Subtropical Surface Water in 113
  - temperature–salinity relations near 109
  - upwelling in 109
- Stokes' drift
  - Agulhas rings, at 182
- Subantarctic Front
  - location of 223
  - meridional range of 222
  - characteristics, surface, of **218**, 223
  - characteristics, thermal, of 223
  - hydrographic section across **224**
  - width of 223
- Subantarctic Mode Water
  - Agulhas Current, in southern 123, **124**
  - Agulhas retroflexion region, in **166**, 166, 167
  - Agulhas rings, in 168
  - Brazil rings, in 178, **179**
  - oxygen content of 123, **124**, 166, **166**, 167
  - South West Indian Ocean, in **28**, 29, **29**
  - Subtropical Convergence, formation at 166
  - temperature–oxygen characteristics of **29**, 29
  - temperature–salinity characteristics of **29**, 29
  - thermostat formed by 19, 29
- Subantarctic Surface Water
  - Agulhas ring shedding, northward penetration at 157, **159**, 162, **163**, 164, 168
  - wedge at Agulhas retroflexion, models of 164
  - temperature–salinity characteristics at Agulhas retroflexion 162
  - Subtropical Convergence, subducting at 30, 218
  - temperature–salinity relationships of, in western Indian Ocean **28**
  - temperature–oxygen relationships of, in western Indian Ocean **29**
- sub-gyre (*see* South West Indian Ocean subgyre)
- submarine canyons
  - channelling shelf sediments, role in 96
- Subtropical Convergence (*see also* North Subtropical Convergence; South Subtropical Convergence)
  - Agulhas Current, affected by 220, 221
  - Agulhas Current eddies at 153, 170, **222**, **227**
  - Agulhas Return Current, juxtapositioned to 7, 24, 209, 210
  - Antarctic Intermediate Water, subduction of, at 30, 166
  - biological habitat at 231
  - birds at 209
  - blooms, phytoplankton at 224
  - characteristics of 221, **222**, 222, 223
  - characteristics, surface, of 223
  - characteristics, thermal, of 223
  - chlorophyll levels, enhanced at 209, 213
  - cetaceans at 209
  - colour at 213
  - convergence at 224
  - diatoms at 209
  - drifters at 224
  - eddies shed from 88, 187, 198, **216**, 221, **226**, **227**, **228**, **230**
  - eddies shed from, model simulation of 48
  - eddy at 156, **222**, **226**, **227**, **228**
  - flow along 19
  - geostrophic speed at 218, **219**
  - hydrographic section across 182, **222**, **216**, 220, **222**, **224**, **228**
  - location of 19, 130, **221**, 223
  - meanders of 225, 227, 229, **229**
  - meanders modelled for **229**
  - meridional range of **221**, 222, 223, **226**
  - mesoscale variability at 21, **154**, 224
  - mixed layer depths at 19, 44, **45**
  - model simulation of 47, **202**, **204**, 224, 225, 229, **229**
  - movement, meridional, of 220, 221
  - nomenclature on 222
  - nutrients at 168, 220
  - palaeo movement of 130
  - pelagic community at 221
  - phytoplankton blooms at 224
  - portrayal of **6**, **226**
  - primary productivity, enhanced, at 21, 224



- research, in pre-war 19
- salinity gradients across 221, **222**
- satellite studies of **221**
- sea surface temperatures at 153, **153**, **221**, **222**
- South Atlantic Ocean, in 220
- South East Pacific Ocean, missing in 218
- Southern Ocean, boundary to 218
- speed along 218, **219**
- Subantarctic Mode Water, formation of, at 19, 178
- Subantarctic Water leakage across 157
- Subantarctic Water subduction at 30, 218
- Subtropical Surface Water at 218
- subsurface gradients of 221
- surface expressions of **218**, **221**
- surface gradients across **218**, 221, **222**
- temperature gradients, horizontal, of 209, 221, **222**
- temperatures of surface waters of 153, **218**
- temperature variability, high, in **153**
- thermal characteristics of **222**
- thermostads at 19
- vertical stability at 224
- vertical temperature structure at 44, **45**
- volume transport along 214, 215, 216, 218, **219**
- whales at 209
- width of 223, **226**
- wind steadiness at 23
- zonal jet at 220
- Subtropical Convergence and Agulhas Retroflexion Cruise (SCARC)
  - investigating Agulhas retroflexion 157
  - investigating Subtropical Convergence 157
- Subtropical front (*see* Subtropical Convergence)
- Subtropical South Indian Ocean Water
  - Mozambique Channel, in **82**, 83
- Subtropical Mode Water
  - Agulhas retroflexion, in and formed at **166**, 166, 167, 168, 178
  - South Atlantic Ocean, in 178
  - South Indian Ocean, in 19, 28, 29, **29**
- Subtropical South Indian Ocean Water (*see also* Subtropical Surface Water)
  - Mozambique Channel, in **82**, **82**
- Subtropical Surface Water (*see also* Subtropical South Indian Ocean Water)
  - Agulhas Bank, on **146**
  - Agulhas Current, in northern 101, **103**, **106**, 106, 107, **107**
  - Agulhas Current, in southern 123
  - Agulhas Current, volume transport in 101, **102**
  - Agulhas retroflexion, in 166, **166**, 167
  - East Madagascar Current, in 61
  - formation of, at 19
  - Mozambique eddies, in 77
  - Natal Bight, on bottom over 110, 113
  - Natal Bight upwelling cell, in 110
  - oxygen content of 29, **29**, **82**, 83, 123
  - Port Alfred upwelling cell, in 135, **136**
  - south-eastern Madagascar upwelling cell, in 62, 63
  - South Equatorial Current, in 44
  - South West Indian Ocean, in **28**, 29, **29**
  - Subtropical Convergence, at 218
  - temperature–salinity relationships of **28**
  - temperature–oxygen relationships of **29**, 29
  - thermostad in 107
  - Subtropical Underwater
    - formed in 89
    - in intra-thermocline eddies 89
    - surface currents (*see also* currents)
      - East Madagascar Current, of 57
      - South Indian Ocean, of 55, **55**
      - Agulhas Current, of northern 121
      - Agulhas Current, of southern 121, 122
    - surface drifter (*see* drifters)
    - surface temperature (*see* sea surface temperature)
    - surface waves (*see* waves)
    - suspension
      - particulate matter in Natal Bight, of 111, 113
  - Synthetic Aperture Radar (SAR)
    - surface waves, use of, to study 133
- TRMM (*see* Tropical Rainfall Measuring Mission)
- Table Bay
  - water temperature of 5
- Taiwan
  - Kuroshio, start of, at 8
  - upwelling cell at 132
- Tasman Front
  - East Australian Current, relationship to (*see also* East Australian Current) 8
- temperature section (*see* hydrographic section)
- temperature–oxygen relationships
  - Agulhas Current, for southern 122, 123, **124**
  - Agulhas retroflexion, in **166**
  - Indian Ocean, for western 28, **29**, 29, 30
  - Mozambique Channel, of waters in **82**, **82**
- temperature–salinity relationships
  - Agulhas Bank waters, for 143, **146**
  - Agulhas Current, across the **179**
  - Agulhas Current, of the northern 101, **102**, **106**, 106, **107**
  - Agulhas Current, for the southern **39**, **124**
  - Agulhas retroflexion, at the 164, 165, **165**
  - Brazil Current, of the **179**
  - Brazil ring, of postulated 178, **179**
  - East Madagascar Current, for 61
  - Indian Central Water, for 4
  - Indian Ocean, of western 28, **28**, 29, 30, **36**
  - Mozambique Channel, of waters in **82**, **82**
  - Natal Bight, for the 113, **114**
  - North Indian Central Water, for 41
  - Port Alfred (upwelling cell), at 135, **136**
  - South Atlantic Central Water, of 40
  - South Indian Central Water, of 40
  - South West Indian Ocean, of **36**, **146**
  - south-eastern Madagascar upwelling cell, of 62, 63

- Thalia democrita* (pelagic tunicate) (*see also* tunicates)
- Agulhas Current water, as indicator species for 15
  - thermal structure
  - Agulhas ring, of new 162
  - Natal Pulse, of a **115**, 116, 138, **138**
  - South West Indian Ocean, of upper layers of 44, **45**, **46**
  - thermocline
  - Agulhas Bank, seasonal, over 129, **141**, 143, **147**
  - Agulhas Current, seasonal, over 143
  - ventilation of in South Indian Ocean 44
  - South West Indian Ocean, permanent in 40, **43**, 44
  - South West Indian Ocean, seasonal in 44
  - thermohaline circulation cell
  - Agulhas Current's role in 130, 191
  - Agulhas rings, role in 191
  - Atlantic Ocean, of 197, **198**, 198, 233
  - climate fluctuations in 130
  - inflow from Indian to Atlantic Ocean, relation to 9, 10
  - Natal Pulse, role in 196
  - meridional heat transport, relation to 10
  - model of 204
  - overturning component of 10
  - thermostat
  - Agulhas retroflexion, in the 168
  - Agulhas rings, in 179, 180, 185
  - Brazil rings, in 179
  - Subantarctic Mode Water, of 19, 29
  - Tropical Surface Water, in 107
- Thomas B. Davie* (vessel)
- Agulhas Return Current, making observations in the 228
- tide
- Agulhas Bank, on **148**
  - shelf current, influence on 145
  - Sofala Bank, at 74
- Tiger* (vessel)
- making observations across the Agulhas Bank 140
- Timor Sea
- Indonesian throughflow, as conduit for 10, 233
- TOPEX/Poseidon (satellite)
- model incorporating altimeter data from 203
  - observations south of Madagascar 68
  - establishing current variability in South West Indian Ocean **68**, 68, **154**
- trajectory
- East Madagascar Current, of 60, 67, 88
  - Agulhas Current, of northern **93**, 93, 94
  - Agulhas Current, of southern 125, **126**, 127
- Transkei Basin
- eddies in **86**, 86, **87**
- transport (*see* volume transport; heat fluxes)
- trapped lee eddy (*see* lee eddy)
- trapped shelf wave (*see* shelf waves)
- Tropical (Indian) Surface Water (*see also* Indian Tropical Surface Water)
- Agulhas Bank, on **146**
  - Agulhas Current, in northern 101, **102**, **106**, 106, 107
  - Agulhas Current, in southern 122
  - Agulhas Current, volume transport in, of 101, **102**
  - Agulhas retroflexion, in **166**
  - East African Current, in 44
  - East Madagascar Current, in 44, 61
  - south-eastern Madagascar upwelling cell, in 62
  - Mozambique Channel, movement through 103, 106
  - Mozambique eddies, in 77
  - Natal Bight, in 113
  - Port Alfred upwelling cell, in 135, **136**
  - South Equatorial Current, in 44
  - South West Indian Ocean, in 28, **28**
  - temperature-salinity characteristics of **28**
  - temperature-oxygen characteristics of **29**, 29
  - volume transport in Agulhas Current of 101, **102**
- Tropical Thermocline Water
- Agulhas Current, in southern **124**
  - Agulhas Current, in northern **107**
  - Agulhas retroflexion, in **166**, 166, 167
  - oxygen content of **166**
  - South West Indian Ocean, in **28**, 29, **29**
  - temperature-salinity relationships of **28**, **124**
  - temperature-oxygen relationships of **29**, **124**
- Tropical Rainfall Measuring Mission (TRMM)
- use of 133
- tunicates
- Agulhas Current water, as indicator species for 15
- UNESCO (*see* United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation)
- United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO)
- United States Navy
- Lieutenant Maury of the 225
- University of Cape Town (UCT)
- pioneering use of satellite remote sensing at 133
  - naming of the Agulhas Return Current at 220
- Upper Circumpolar Deep Water
- temperature-oxygen relationships of, in western Indian Ocean **29**
  - Agulhas retroflexion, in **166**
- upstream retroflexion
- Agulhas Plateau, intersecting 196
  - depth of 196
  - drifters, shown by 196
  - duration of 196
  - incomplete 196
  - Natal Pulse, caused by 6, 120, 196
  - Port Elizabeth, south of 196
- upwelling (*see also* coastal upwelling; upwelling cell; upwelling filament)
- Agulhas Bank, over **159**
  - Agulhas Current, along edge of 122, 132, **135**
  - Agulhas filament, along edge of 131
  - Benguela regime 140, 190
  - Cape Town, off **159**
  - eddies in 190
  - filaments on 190, **191**

- Madagascar, south-east of **60**, **61**, **62**
- Natal Bight, at **110**
- Port Alfred, at **132**, **135**
- south coast headlands, at **140**, **141**
- upwelling cell
  - Agulhas Current, inshore of southern **159**
  - Benguela regime, part of **190**
  - Cape St Lucia, off **109**
  - Delagoa Bight, in **79**
  - East Madagascar Current, inshore of **60**, **61**, **132**
  - Madagascar, off south-eastern **60**, **61**, **62**, **132**
  - Natal Bight, in **109**
  - Port Alfred, at **116**, **131**, **132**, **135**, **135**, **136**, **136**, **137**, **138**, **138**
  - Richards Bay, off **109**
  - Taiwan, off **132**
  - temperature–salinity relationships of, at Port Alfred **135**, **136**
  - subsurface chlorophyll maxima in **62**, **63**
- upwelling filament
  - Agulhas ring, wrapping around **190**
  - Benguela upwelling system, in frontal zone of **190**
  - dimensions of **190**
  - modelling of **190**
  - Natal Bight, at **110**
  - Madagascar, south-east of **61**, **63**, **65**
- US Naval Oceanographic Office **23**
- Utrecht University
  - involvement in MARE **157**
- Valdivia* (vessel)
  - pioneering observations near South Africa **2**, **5**, **19**
- variability
  - Agulhas Current retroflexion, at **25**, **68**, **151**, **152**, **154**
  - Agulhas retroflexion, of **68**, **194**, **196**
  - Agulhas Return Current, of **68**, **217**, **154**
  - Cape Basin, in **68**, **196**
  - drifter movement, based on **152**
  - modelled **75**
  - South Atlantic circulation, of **194**
  - South West Indian Ocean, for **68**, **154**
  - South West Indian Ocean, seasonal in **44**, **45**
  - Southern Ocean, in **152**
  - Subtropical Convergence, along **21**, **154**, **224**, **225**
- Vema Seamount
  - Agulhas ring, splitting of, at **180**, **189**, **189**
  - Agulhas rings, splitting at, simulated **204**
  - models, in **202**
- vertical (hydrographic) sections (*see also* hydrographic sections)
  - Agulhas, southern, across **122**, **134**
  - Natal Bight, along **110**, **111**
  - Natal Pulse, across a **115**
  - meander in northern Agulhas Current, across **114**, **115**
- vertical temperature structure
  - Agulhas Bank, over **141**, **144**
  - Agulhas ring, of **162**
  - Mozambique Channel, in **44**, **45**
  - South West Indian Ocean, in **44**, **45**
  - Subtropical Convergence, at **44**, **45**
  - viscous stress curl
    - model, in **200**
  - volume flux (*see* volume transport)
  - volume transport
    - abyssal boundary current east of Madagascar, of **69**
    - Agulhas Current, contribution to, by sources **24**, **41**, **57**, **58**, **60**, **72**, **75**, **85**
    - Agulhas Current, downstream increase in **104**, **121**, **168**, **170**, **215**, **215**
    - Agulhas Current, modelled for **202**, **203**
    - Agulhas Current, of **87**, **100**, **101**, **146**, **170**, **214**, **215**, **215**
    - Agulhas Current, of northern **42**, **101**, **102**, **103**, **104**, **104**, **215**, **215**
    - Agulhas Current, of southern **122**, **151**, **214**
    - Agulhas Current, seasonality for, of **101**, **102**, **144**
    - Agulhas Current, simulated for **195**
    - Agulhas Current penetration into South Atlantic, affecting **190**, **198**, **198**
    - Agulhas eddy, around **227**
    - Agulhas Front, at **215**
    - Agulhas Retroflexion, of **170**, **170**, **218**
    - Agulhas Return Current, of **42**, **122**, **214**, **215**, **215**, **216**, **217**, **218**, **219**
    - Agulhas Current, eastward diminution in **215**, **216**, **217**
    - Agulhas Return Current, simulated for **195**
    - Agulhas ring off Cape Town, of an **156**, **170**
    - Agulhas Undercurrent, of **95**
    - Antarctic Bottom Water in South Atlantic, of **197**
    - Antarctic Intermediate Water south of Africa, of **192**
    - Antarctic Intermediate Water in South Atlantic, of **197**
    - Antarctic Polar Front, at **122**
    - Benguela Current, Agulhas Current contribution to **190**
    - Cape Agulhas, from **215**
    - Cape Basin, across **192**
    - Cape St Lucia, off **100**
    - Durban, off **87**, **100**, **215**
    - East African (Coastal) Current, of **69**
    - East Madagascar Current, of **57**, **58**, **60**, **72**
    - eddies in Natal Basin, of **87**
    - inter-ocean, by Agulhas filaments **193**
    - inter-ocean, by Agulhas rings **193**
    - inter-ocean, modelled **195**
    - Madagascar, south of **68**, **215**
    - modelled, south of Africa **195**
    - Mozambique Channel, into the northern **70**
    - Mozambique Channel, southern mouth, through **80**, **81**
    - Mozambique Channel, through **42**, **42**
    - Mozambique Current, of **75**
    - Mozambique Current, simulated for **69**, **70**
    - Mozambique Undercurrent, of **69**
    - North Atlantic Deep Water in South Atlantic, of **101**, **102**, **197**
    - Port Alfred, off **100**, **101**
    - Red Sea Water in Agulhas Current, of **101**, **102**

- South Atlantic Current, of 192, **219**
- South Atlantic Surface Water, of 197
- South Atlantic Ocean, in 197
- South Indian Central Water in Agulhas Current, of 101, **102**
- South Indian Ocean, of 23
- South West Indian eddies, of **87**
- South West Indian Ocean subgyre, of **41**, 85
- Subtropical Convergence, along 41, 214, 215, 216, **219**
- Subtropical Surface Water in Agulhas Current, of 101, **102**
- Tropical Surface Water in Agulhas Current, of 101, **102**
- water masses of northern Agulhas Current, of **102**
- volumetry
  - Agulhas retroflexion, of 164
  - Indian Ocean, of 27, **28**
  - South West Indian Ocean, of 27, **27**
- vortex (*see* eddy)
- vortex dipole
  - altimetric data, seen in 204
  - Agulhas retroflexion, modelled at 204
  - Benguela upwelling front, in 190
  - East Madagascar Current, from 81, **89**, 89
- vortex shedding
  - Natal Pulse, as mechanism for 116
- WOCE (*see* World Ocean Circulation Experiment)
- Waikato (vessel)
  - in Agulhas Return Current 209
- Walvis Ridge
  - Agulhas rings beyond 180, **182**, 182
  - Agulhas rings influenced by 187, 188, 233
  - Benguela Current moving through 188
  - Cape Basin cyclone crossing 177
  - Cape of Good Hope Experiment investigating up to 157
  - floats crossing 187, 192
  - models, in 202
  - North Atlantic Deep Water moving through 32, **33**
- warm water plumes (*see* plumes)
- water masses
  - Agulhas retroflexion, of 164, **165**, **166**, 166, 167, 168
  - Agulhas retroflexion, modifications at 168
  - South West Indian Ocean, of 26, 28, **28**, 29, **29**, **30**, **31**
  - South West Indian Ocean, volumes for 27, **27**
- Waterwich (vessel)
  - pioneer observations from 2
- waves
  - Agulhas Current, relationship to 105
  - altimetry, studied using 133
  - amplification of 105, 133
  - attenuation of 105, 133
  - climate of 105
  - coastally trapped in atmosphere 148
  - coastally trapped shelf 149
  - energy of 105
  - “monster”, “freak” or “giant” 105
  - shelf 149
  - synthetic aperture radar, studied using 133
- Weather Bureau (*see* South African Weather Bureau)
- Weddell Sea
  - Antarctic Bottom Water, formation region for 9
  - western Agulhas Bank (*see* Agulhas Bank)
  - western boundary currents
    - Agulhas Current as (*see also* Agulhas Current) ix, 9
    - Brazil Current as 8, 9
    - deep 32
    - East Australian Current as 8, 9
    - Gulf Stream as ix, 8, 9
    - Kuroshio as 8, 9
  - western Indian Ocean (*see also* Indian Ocean; South West Indian Ocean)
    - current simulations for 57, **57**
    - Indian Central Water in 41
    - North Indian Central Water in 41
    - temperature–oxygen relationships of water masses in **29**
    - temperature–salinity relationships of water masses in **28**
  - whales
    - Agulhas Current, distribution influenced by 14
    - Agulhas retroflexion, in 209
    - Subtropical Convergence, along 209
  - wind (*see also* land–sea breezes; South West Monsoon; North East Monsoon; wind steadiness; wind stress)
    - Agulhas Bank, over the 141, **142**, **143**, 148, 149
    - Agulhas Bank, spreading Agulhas plumes over 129
    - Agulhas water entering South Atlantic, influence on 164
    - berg, and upwelling filaments 190
    - circulation cells over southern Agulhas Current 149
    - circulation cells over Gulf Stream 149
    - coastal 23, 148
    - Gouriqua, at 141, **142**
    - jet over southern Agulhas Current 149
    - Natal Bight, longshore, at 112, **113**
    - Port Alfred, at 138, **150**
    - Port Elizabeth, at 149
    - Richards Bay, at 113
    - South Atlantic, over 194
- wind steadiness (*see also* winds)
  - South West Indian Ocean, over 23
- wind stress
  - controlling Agulhas retroflexion in model 199
  - South West Indian Ocean, patterns over 23, 154, 168
- Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution
  - participating in Benguela Sources and Transports programme 157
- World Ocean Circulation Experiment (WOCE)
  - South African participation in 21
  - measurements in Mozambique Channel during 81, 236
- Zambezi
  - runoff from 73
- Zanzibar Current (*see* East African Current)